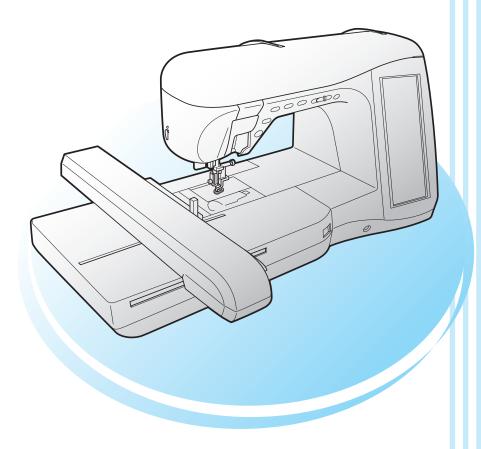
Computerized Sewing and Embroidery Machine

Operation Manual

Product Code:882-S96





Getting Ready



Sewing Basics



Utility Stitches



Character/ Decorative Stitches



Embroidery



Embroidery Edit



My Custom Stitch



Appendix



Please visit us at http://solutions.brother.com when you can get product support and answers to frequently asked questions (FAQs).

IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

When using this machine, basic safety precautions should always be taken, including the following: Read all instructions before using.

DANGER - To reduce the risk of electric shock:

1. The machine should never be left unattended while plugged in. Always unplug the machine from the electrical outlet immediately after using and before cleaning.

WARNING - To reduce the risk of burns, fire, electric shock, or injury to persons:

- 1. Do not allow this machine to be used as a toy. Close attention is necessary when the machine is used by or near children.
- 2. Use this machine only for its intended use as described in this manual. Use only accessories recommended by the manufacturer as contained in this manual.
- 3. Never operate this machine if it has a damaged cord or plug, if it is not working properly, if it has been dropped or damaged, or dropped into water. Return the machine to the nearest authorized dealer or service center for examination, repair, electrical or mechanical adjustment.
- 4. Never operate the machine with any air openings blocked. Keep ventilation openings of the machine and foot control free from the accumulation of lint, dust, and loose cloth.
- 5. Never drop or insert any object into any opening.
- 6. Do not use outdoors.
- 7. Do not operate where aerosol (spray) products are being used or where oxygen is being administered.
- 8. To disconnect, turn the main switch to the symbol "O" position which represents off, then remove plug from outlet.
- 9. Do not unplug by pulling on cord. To unplug, grasp the plug, not the cord.
- 10. Keep fingers away from all moving parts. Special care is required around the machine needle.
- 11. Always use the proper needle plate. The wrong plate can cause the needle to break.
- 12. Do not use bent needles.
- 13. Do not pull or push fabric while stitching. It may deflect the needle causing it to break.
- 14. Switch the machine to the symbol "O" position when making any adjustments in the needle area, such as threading needle, changing needle, threading bobbin, or changing presser foot, and the like.
- 15. Always unplug the machine from the electrical outlet when removing covers, lubricating, or when making any other user servicing adjustments mentioned in the instruction manual.
- 16. This sewing machine is not intended for use by young children or infirm persons without supervision.
- 17. Young children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with this machine.
- 18. If the light unit is damaged, it must be replaced by authorized dealer.
- 19. Hold the foot controller plug when rewinding into cord reel. Do not allow the plug to whip when rewinding.

Use this machine only for its intended use as described in this manual.

Use accessories recommended by the manufacturer as contained in this manual.

The contents of this manual and specifications of this product are subject to change without notice.

For additional product information, visit our web site at www.brother.com

SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS This machine is intended for household use.

This appliance is not intended for use by persons (including children) with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities, or lack of experience and knowledge, unless they have been given supervision or instruction concerning use of the appliance by a person responsible for their safety. Children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with the appliance.

FOR USERS IN THE UK, EIRE, MALTA AND CYPRUS ONLY

IMPORTANT

- In the event of replacing the plug fuse, use a fuse approved by ASTA to BS 1362, i.e. carrying the mark, rating as marked on plug.
- Always replace the fuse cover. Never use plugs with the fuse cover omitted.
- If the available electrical outlet is not suitable for the plug supplied with this equipment, you should contact your authorized dealer to obtain the correct lead.

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Declaration of Conformity (For USA Only)

Responsible Party: Brother International Corporation

100 Somerset Corporate Boulevard Bridgewater, NJ 08807-0911 USA

TEL: (908) 704-1700

declares that the product

Product Name: Brother Sewing Machine

Model Number: NV5000

complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.
- The enclosed interface cable should be used in order to ensure compliance with the limits for a Class B digital device.
- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by Brother Industries, Ltd. could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

CONGRATULATIONS ON CHOOSING OUR MACHINE

Your machine is the most advanced computerized household embroidery and sewing machine. To fully enjoy all the features incorporated, we suggest that you study the manual.

PLEASE READ BEFORE USING THIS MACHINE

For safe operation

- 1. Be sure to keep your eye on the needle while sewing. Do not touch the handwheel, thread take-up, needle, or other moving parts.
- 2. Remember to turn off the power switch and unplug the cord when:
 - Operation is completed
 - Replacing or removing the needle or any other parts
 - A power failure occurs during use
 - Maintaining the machine
 - Leaving the machine unattended.
- 3. Do not store anything on the foot controller.
- 4. Plug the machine directly into the wall. Do not use extension cords.

For a longer service life

- 1. When storing this machine, avoid direct sunlight and high humidity locations. Do not use or store the machine near a space heater, iron, halogen lamp, or other hot objects.
- 2. Use only neutral soaps or detergents to clean the case. Benzene, thinner, and scouring powders can damage the case and machine, and should never be used.
- 3. Do not drop or hit the machine.
- 4. Always consult the operation manual when replacing or installing any assemblies, the presser feet, needle, or other parts to assure correct installation.

For repair or adjustment

In the event a malfunction occurs or adjustment is required, first follow the troubleshooting table in the back of the operation manual to inspect and adjust the machine yourself. If the problem persists, please consult your local authorized Brother dealer.

For additional product information and updates, visit our web site at www.brother.com

The contents of this manual, specifications of this product and also design of display are subject to change without notice.

V

WHAT YOU CAN DO WITH THIS MACHINE

SPECIAL FEATURES



Check operations and view advice on the large LCD (liquid crystal display).



Prepare the bobbin thread with one touch.



The automatic thread tension makes trial sewing unnecessary.



Automatic threading makes threading quick and easy.

Getting Ready

To learn the operation of the principal parts and the screens



Sewing Basics

To learn how to prepare for sewing and basic sewing operations



Utility Stitches

Pre-programmed with more than 100 frequently used stitches



Character/Decorative Stitches

The variety of stitches widen your creativity



Embroidery

Maximum 30 cm x 18 cm (approx. 12 x 7 inches) for large embroidery designs



Embroidery Edit

Designs can be combined, rotated or enlarged



My Custom Stitch

Create original decorative stitches



Appendix

Caring for your machine and dealing with errors and malfunctions

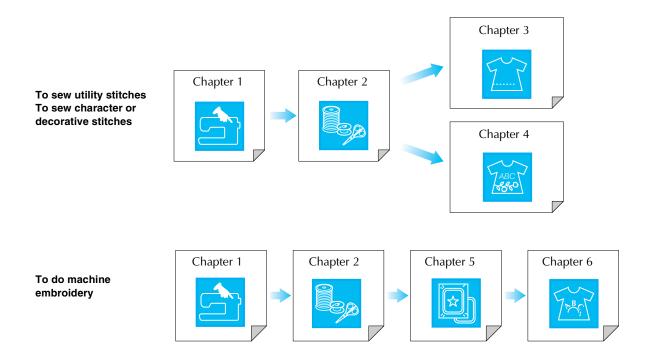


HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

Chapter 1 and Chapter 2 explain your sewing machine's basic operation procedures for someone who is using the sewing machine for the first time. If you want to sew utility stitches or character/ decorative stitches, read Chapter 1 and Chapter 2, then go on to Chapter 3 (Utility Stitches) or Chapter 4 (Character/ Decorative Stitches).

When you are ready to begin using the embroidery function after reading Chapter 1 and Chapter 2, proceed to Chapter 5 (Embroidery). Once you understand the steps explained in Chapter 5, go on to Chapter 6 (Embroidery Edit) for an explanation about the convenient embroidery edit functions. In the screens that appear in the step-by-step directions the parts that are used for the operation are shown

in . Compare the screen in the directions with the actual screen, and carry out the operation. If, while using the machine, you experience something you do not understand, or there is a function you would like to know more about, refer to the index at the back of the operation manual in conjunction with the table of contents to find the section of the manual you should refer to.



CONTENTS

IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS WHAT YOU CAN DO WITH THIS MACHINOW TO USE THIS MANUAL NAMES OF MACHINE PARTS AND THEIR	NEvi
FUNCTIONS	1
Machine	
Needle and Presser Foot Section	
Embroidery Unit	
Operation Buttons	
Included Accessories	
Options	6
Chapter 1 Getting Ready	7
TURNING THE MACHINE ON/OFF	0
Using the Machine Setting Mode Key	
Using the Machine Operation Mode Key	
Using the Pattern Explanation Key	
LOWER THREADING	
Winding the Bobbin	
Setting the Bobbin	22
Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread	23
UPPER THREADING	
Threading Using the "Automatic Threading" Button	25
Threading Manually	
Using the Twin Needle Mode	
Using Threads that Unwind Quickly	
CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT	
Removing the Presser Foot	
Attaching the Walking Foot	
CHANGING THE NEEDLE	
CHANGING THE MELDEE	
Chanton 2 Souring Paging	
Chapter 4 Sewing Basics	37
	٠.
SEWING	38
SEWING	38
SEWING	38 38 40
SEWING	38 38 40
SEWING Sewing a Stitch Sewing Reinforcement Stitches Sewing Curves	38 40 40 40
SEWING Sewing a Stitch Sewing Reinforcement Stitches Sewing Curves Changing Sewing Direction Sewing Heavyweight Fabrics Sewing Lightweight Fabrics	38 40 40 40 41
SEWING Sewing a Stitch Sewing Reinforcement Stitches Sewing Curves Changing Sewing Direction Sewing Heavyweight Fabrics Sewing Lightweight Fabrics STITCH SETTINGS	38 40 40 40 41 41
SEWING Sewing a Stitch	384040414142
SEWING Sewing a Stitch	38404041414242
SEWING Sewing a Stitch	3840404141424242
SEWING Sewing a Stitch	38
SEWING Sewing a Stitch Sewing Reinforcement Stitches Sewing Curves Changing Sewing Direction Sewing Heavyweight Fabrics Sewing Lightweight Fabrics Setting Lightweight Fabrics Stitch Setting Setting the Stitch Width Setting the Stitch Length Setting the Thread Tension USEFUL FUNCTIONS Automatic Reinforcement Stitching	38
SEWING Sewing a Stitch	38404041414242434444
SEWING Sewing a Stitch Sewing Reinforcement Stitches Sewing Curves Changing Sewing Direction Sewing Heavyweight Fabrics Sewing Lightweight Fabrics Setting Lightweight Fabrics Stitch Setting Setting the Stitch Width Setting the Stitch Length Setting the Thread Tension USEFUL FUNCTIONS Automatic Reinforcement Stitching	38404041414242434444
SEWING Sewing a Stitch	38404041414242434444
SEWING Sewing a Stitch	384040414142424344444546
SEWING Sewing a Stitch	384040414242424445444548
SEWING Sewing a Stitch	38404041424242444544454648
SEWING Sewing a Stitch	3840404142424243444546474848
SEWING Sewing a Stitch	3840404142424243444546474848
SEWING Sewing a Stitch	38404041424242434445464748485053
SEWING Sewing a Stitch	384040414242434445464848505153
SEWING Sewing a Stitch	38
SEWING Sewing a Stitch	38
SEWING Sewing a Stitch	383840404142424344454647485053535753
SEWING Sewing a Stitch	383840404142424344454647485053535753
SEWING Sewing a Stitch	383840404142424344444546474850515357535759
Sewing a Stitch	38384040414242434445464748505353575357596060

Appliqué	
Shelltuck Stitches	
Scallop Stitches	
Smocking Stitches	
Fagoting	
Tape or Elastic Attaching	
Heirloom	
One-step Buttonholes	80
Four-step Buttonholes	84
Bar Tacks	
Button Sewing	
Eyelet	
Multi-directional Sewing (Straight Stitch and Zigzag Stitch) Zipper Insertion	
Chapter 4 Character/Decorative Stitches	97
·	
SELECTING STITCH PATTERNS	
Selecting Decorative Stitch Patterns/7mm Decorative Stitch Patterns/Satin Stitch Patterns/7mm Satin Stitch Patterns/Cros	
Stitch/Utility Decorative Stitch Patterns	
Alphabet Characters	
SEWING STITCH PATTERNS	
Sewing Attractive Finishes	
Basic Sewing	
Making Adjustments	
EDITING STITCH PATTERNS	105
Changing the Size	
Changing the Length (for 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns Only)	
Creating a Vertical Mirror Image	
Creating a Horizontal Mirror Image	
Sewing a Pattern Continuously	.107
Changing Thread Density	
(for Satin Stitch Patterns Only)	.108
Checking the Image	108
COMBINING STITCH PATTERNS	
Before Combining	
Combining Various Stitch Patterns	
Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns	
Combining Stitch Patterns of Different Length	
Making Step Stitch Patterns	
(for 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns Only)	.114
USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION	116
Stitch Data Precautions	.116
Saving Stitch Patterns in the Machine's Memory	118
Saving Stitch Patterns to USB Media	
(Commercially Available)	
Saving Stitch Patterns in the Computer	
Retrieving Stitch Patterns from the Machine's Memory	
Recalling from USB Media Recalling from the Computer	
· /	25
BEFORE EMBROIDERING	
Embroidery Step by Step	.126
Attaching Embroidery Foot "W"	
Attaching the Embroidery Unit	
SELECTING PATTERNS	130
Selecting Embroidery Patterns/Heirloom Patterns/Border	122
Patterns/Cross stitch Patterns/Floral alphabet Patterns	
Selecting Alphabet Character Patterns	
Selecting Frame Patterns Selecting Patterns from Embroidery Cards	
Selecting Patterns from USB media/Computer	
VIEWING THE SEWING SCREEN	
PREPARING THE FABRIC	
Attaching Iron-on Stabilizers (backing) to the Fabric	
, maching mon-on stabilizers (backling) to the Labite	100

Hooping the Fabric in the Embroidery Frame	
Embroidering Small Fabrics or Fabric Edges	
ATTACHING THE EMBROIDERY FRAME	
CONFIRMING THE PATTERN POSITION	
Checking the Pattern Position	
Previewing the Completed Pattern	
SEWING AN EMBROIDERY PATTERN Sewing Attractive Finishes	
Sewing Embroidery Patterns	
Sewing Embroidery Patterns Which Use Appliqué	
ADJUSTMENTS DURING THE EMBROIDE	
PROCESS	150
If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread	150
If the Thread Breaks During Sewing	
Restarting from the Beginning	
Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power MAKING EMBROIDERY ADJUSTMENTS .	152 1 1 1
Adjusting Thread Tension	
Using the Automatic Thread Cutting Function	13-
(END COLOR TRIM)	155
Using the Thread Trimming Function (JUMP STITCH	I TRIM) 155
Adjusting the Embroidery Speed	
Changing the Thread Color Display	
Changing the Embroidery Frame DisplayREVISING THE PATTERN	
Changing the Pattern Position	
Aligning the Pattern and the Needle	
Changing the Size	
Rotating the Pattern	161
Creating a Horizontal Mirror Image	162
Changing the Density (Alphabet Character and Frame Patterns Only)	167
Changing the Colors of Alphabet Character Patterns	
USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION	
Embroidery Data Precautions	
Saving Embroidery Patterns in the Machine's Memor	
Saving Embroidery Patterns to USB Media (Commercial Commercial Com	
Available)Saving Embroidery Patterns in the Computer	
Retrieving Patterns from the Machine's Memory	
Recalling from USB Media	
Recalling from the Computer	171
EMBROIDERY APPLICATIONS	
Using a Frame Pattern to Make an Appliqué (1)	173
Using a Frame Pattern to Make an Appliqué (2)	174
Chapter 6 Embroidery Edit	17 5
•	
EXPLANATION OF FUNCTIONSSELECTING PATTERNS TO EDIT	
Selecting FATTERNS TO EDIT	
Patterns/Cross stitch Patterns/Floral Alphabet Pattern	
Patterns	
Selecting Alphabet Character Patterns	
EDITING PATTERNS	
Moving the Pattern	
Rotating the Pattern	
Changing the Size of the Pattern Deleting the Pattern	
Changing the Configuration of Alphabet Character P	
Changing Alphabet Character Spacing	
Changing the Color of Each	
Alphabet Character in a Pattern	
Changing the Thread Color	
Creating a Custom Thread Table Choosing a Color from the Custom Thread Table	
Designing Repeated Patterns	190
After Editing	194
COMBINING PATTERNS	
Editing Combined Patterns	
Sewing Combined Patterns	

Chapter 7 MY CUSTOM STITCH	199
DESIGNING A STITCH	200
ENTERING STITCH DATA	
USING STORED CUSTOM STITCHES	
Storing Custom Stitches in Your List	
Retrieving Stored Stitches	
Chapter 8 Appendix	209
CARE AND MAINTENANCE	210
About the Maintenance Message	210
Cleaning the LCD Screen	
Cleaning the Machine Casing	210
Cleaning the Race	
Adjusting the Alternate Bobbin Case (with no marking)	211
ADJUSTING THE SCREEN	21 2
Screen Visibility is Low	212
Touch Panel is Malfunctioning	212
TROUBLESHOOTING	214
ERROR MESSAGES	217
SPECIFICATIONS	
UPGRADING YOUR MACHINE'S SOFTWARE	
Upgrade Procedure Using USB Media	224
Upgrade Procedure Using Computer	
STITCH SETTING CHART	227
INDEX	



















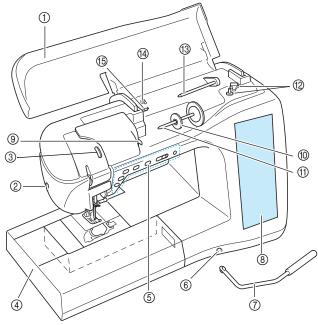


NAMES OF MACHINE PARTS AND THEIR FUNCTIONS

The names of the various parts of the sewing machine and their functions are described below. Before using the sewing machine, carefully read these descriptions to learn the names of the machine parts.

Machine

■ Front View



① Top cover

Open the top cover to thread the machine and wind the bobbin.

2 Thread cutter

Pass the threads through the thread cutter to cut them.

3 Thread take-up lever check window

Look through the window to check the upper thread passing through in it.

4 Flat bed attachment with accessory compartment Store presser feet and bobbins in the accessory compartment of the flat bed attachment. When sewing cylindrical pieces,

remove the flat bed attachment.

⑤ Operation buttons (6 buttons) and sewing speed controller

Use these buttons and the slide to operate the sewing machine.

6 Knee lifter slot

Insert the knee lifter into the slot.

⑦ Knee lifter

Use the knee lifter to raise and lower the presser foot.

(8) LCD (liquid crystal display)

Settings for the selected stitch and error messages appear in the LCD.

Thread guide plate

Pass the thread around the thread guide plate when threading upper thread.

⑤ Spool cap

Use the spool cap to hold the spool in place.

① Spool pin

Place a spool of thread on the spool pin.

12 Bobbin winder

Use the bobbin winder when winding the bobbin.

(3) Supplemental spool pin

Use this spool pin to wind the bobbin thread, or to sew with the twin needle.

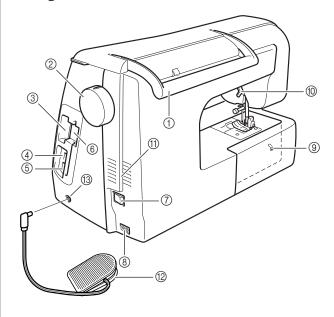
(4) Thread guide for bobbin winding

Pass the thread around this thread guide when winding the bobbin thread.

6 Pretension disk

Pass the thread around the pretension disk when winding the bobbin thread.

■ Right-side/Rear View



① Handle

Carry the sewing machine by its handle when transporting the machine.

② Handwheel

Turn the handwheel toward you to raise and lower the needle. The wheel should be turned toward the front of the machine.

(3) Embroidery card slot

Insert the embroidery cards (sold separately) into the embroidery card slot.

4 USB port connector for media

In order to send patterns from/to USB media, plug the USB media directly into the USB port connector.

(5) USB port connector for computer

In order to import/export patterns between a computer and the machine, plug the USB cable into the USB port connector.

⑥ Touch pen holder

Use the touch pen holder to hold the touch pen when not in use.

7) Main power switch

Use the main power switch to turn the sewing machine ON and OFF.

Jack connector

Insert the power cord into the connector jack.

Feed dog position switch

Use the feed dog position switch to lower the feed dogs.

Presser foot lever

Raise and lower the presser foot lever to raise and lower the presser foot.

Air vent

The air vent allows the air surrounding the motor to circulate. Do not cover the air vent while the sewing machine is being used.

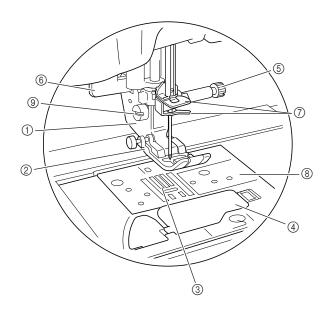
Poot controller with retractable cord

Depress the foot controller to control the speed of the machine.

Foot controller jack

Insert the foot controller plug into its jack on the machine.

Needle and Presser Foot Section



Presser foot holder

The presser foot is attached onto the presser foot holder.

Presser foot

The presser foot applies pressure consistently on the fabric as sewing takes place. Attach the appropriate presser foot for the selected stitch.

Feed dogs

The feed dogs feed the fabric in the sewing direction.

4 Bobbin cover

Open the bobbin cover to set the bobbin.

Needle clamp screw

Use the needle clamp screw to hold the needle in place.

Buttonhole lever

The buttonhole lever is used with the one-step buttonhole foot to create buttonholes

Needle bar thread guides

Pass the upper thread through the two needle bar thread guides

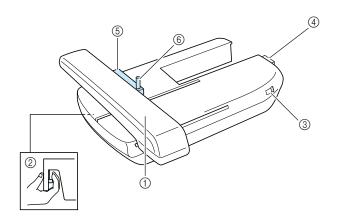
8 Needle plate

The needle plate is marked with guides to help sew straight

Presser foot holder screw

Use the presser foot holder screw to hold the presser foot in place

Embroidery Unit



1 Carriage

The carriage moves the embroidery frame automatically when

Release button (located under the embroidery unit) Press the release button to remove the embroidery unit.

Feed dog position switch

Use the feed dog position switch to raise and lower the feed dogs while the embroidery unit is attached.

Embroidery unit connection

Insert the embroidery unit connection into the connection port when attaching the embroidery unit.

Embroidery frame holder

Insert the embroidery frame into the embroidery frame holder to hold the frame in place.

Frame-securing lever

Press the frame-securing lever down to secure the embroidery frame.



CAUTION

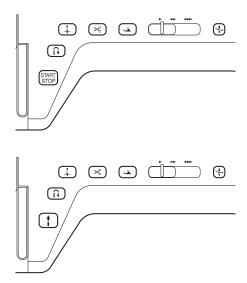
After the embroidery frame is set in the frame holder, be sure the frame-securing lever is correctly lowered.



└ Note

- Be sure that the feed dog position switch on the embroidery unit is located at right when embroidering.
- You can also sew utility/decorative stitches with the embroidery unit attached. Set the feed dog position switch on the embroidery unit to the appropriate setting.

Operation Buttons



1 "Start/Stop" button START AT TOTAL TOTAL START STOP

Press this button and the machine will sew a few stitches at a slow speed and then begin sewing at the speed set by the sewing speed controller. Press the button again to stop the machine. Hold the button in to sew at the machine's slowest speed. The button changes color according to the machine's operation mode.

Green: the machine is ready to sew or is sewing.

Red: the machine cannot sew.

② "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button

Use this button to sew reinforcement stitches at the beginning and end of sewing. Press this button, and the machine sews 3 stitches in the same spot and stops automatically. For straight and zigzag stitch patterns that take reverse stitches, the machine will sew reverse stitches at low speed only while holding down the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button (the stitches are sewn in the opposite direction).

③ "Needle Position" button ☐

Use this button when changing sewing direction or for detailed sewing in small areas. Press this button to raise or lower the needle position. Press the button twice to sew a single stitch.

④ "Thread Cutter" button

Press this button after sewing to automatically trim the excess thread.

⑤ "Presser Foot Lifter" button 💶

Press this button to lower the presser foot and apply pressure to the fabric. Press this button again to raise the presser foot.

6 Sewing Speed controller

Use this controller to adjust the sewing speed. Move the slide to the left to sew at slower speeds. Move the slide to the right to sew at higher speeds. Beginners should sew at a slow speed.

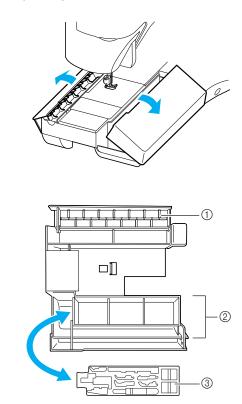
Use this button to automatically thread the needle.

A CAUTION

 Do not press the thread cutter button after the threads have already been cut. Otherwise, the needle may break, the threads may become tangled, or damage to the machine may occur.

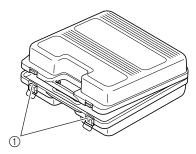
Included Accessories

Pull the top of the flat bed attachment to open the accessory compartment.



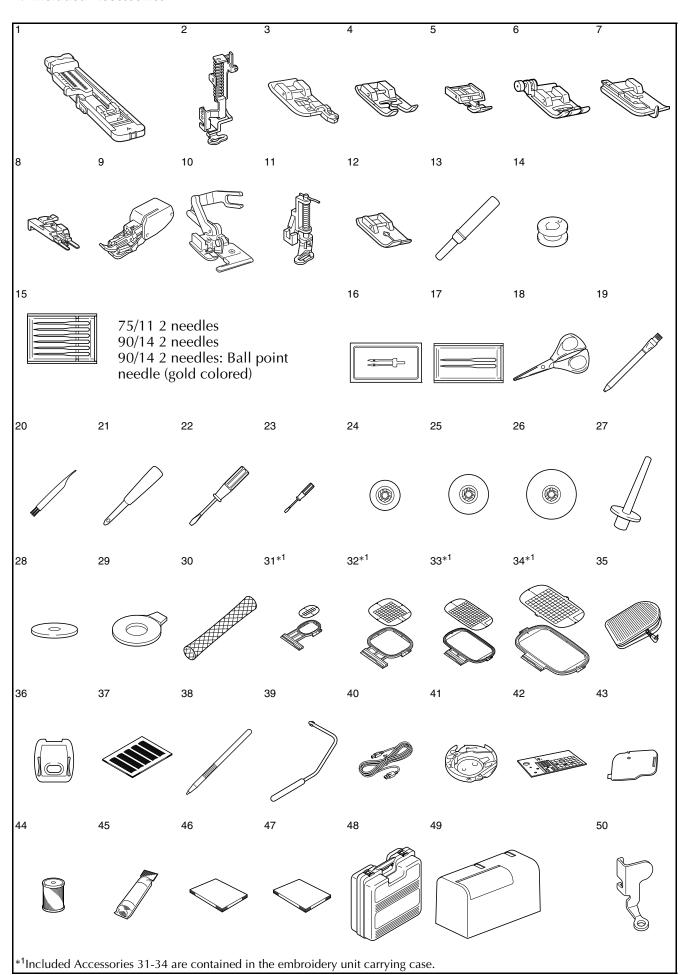
- 1 Storage space
- ② Presser foot storage space
- ③ Presser foot storage space

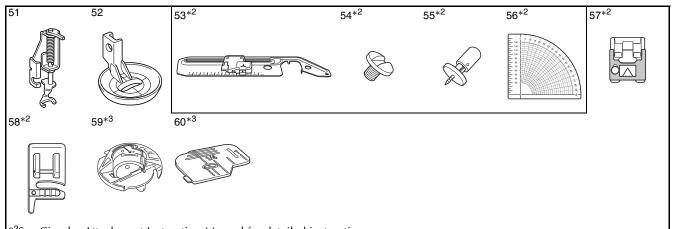
Included Accessories 31-34 are contained in the embroidery unit carrying case. To open the embroidery unit carrying case, unhook the two latches on the case. To re-hook the latches and securely close the case, press on the latches until each of them clicks.



1 Latches

\rightarrow Included Accessories





*2See Circular Attachment Instruction Manual for detailed instruction.

*3See Operation Manual Addendum for detailed instruction.

		Part Code			
No.	Part Name	U.S.A./ Canada Others			
1	Buttonhole foot "A"	X57789-151			
2	Embroidery foot "W"		XC8156-651		
3	Overcasting foot "G"		XC3098-051		
4	Monogramming foot "N"		X53840-351		
5	Zipper foot "l"		X59370-051		
6	Zigzag foot "J" (on machine)		XC3021-051		
7	Blind stitch foot "R"		X56409-051		
8	Button fitting foot "M"		130489-001		
9	Walking foot	SA140	F033N:X81125-001		
10	Side cutter foot	SA177	F054:XC3198-101		
11	Free-motion quilting foot	SA129	F005N:XC1948-002		
12	Straight stitch foot	SA167	F042N:XC1973-102		
13	Seam ripper		X54243-051		
14	Bobbin × 10	SA156	SFB		
15	Needle set		X58358-051		
16	Twin needle		X59296-151		
17	Ball point needle set		XD0705-051		
18	Scissors	XC1807-121			
19	Chalk pen	XE8568-001			
20	Cleaning brush	X59476-051			
21	Eyelet punch	135793-001			
22	Screwdriver (large)	XC8349-021			
23	Screwdriver (small)	X55468-021			
24	Spool cap (small)	130013-154			
25	Spool cap (medium) × 2		X55260-153		
26	Spool cap (large)		130012-054		
27	Vertical spool pin		XC8619-051		
28	Spool felt		X57045-051		
29	Disc-shaped screwdriver		XC1074-051		
30	Spool net		XA5523-050		
31	Embroidery frame set (small) H 2 cm × W 6 cm (H 1 inch × W 2-1/2 inches)	SA437	EF73:XC8479-052		
32	Embroidery frame set (medium) H 10 cm × W 10 cm (H 4 inches × W 4 inches)	SA438	FE74:XC8480-052		
33	Embroidery frame set (large) H 18 cm × W 13 cm (H 7 inches × W 5 inches)	SA439	EF75:XC8481-052		
34	Embroidery frame set (extra large) H 30 cm × W 18 cm (H 12 inches × W 7 inches)	SA440	EF76:XC8482-052		
35	Foot controller	XD0500-151 (EU area) XC8028-051 (other area)			
36	Embroidery needle plate cover	XA9939-051			

			Part Code
No.	Part Name	U.S.A./ Canada	Others
37	Grid sheet set	SA507	GS3:X81277-150
38	Touch pen (stylus)		XA9940-051
39	Knee lifter		XA6941-052
40	USB cable	2	XD0745-051
41	Bobbin case (no marking)	2	XC8167-551
42	Straight stitch needle plate	2	XC8362-151
43	Cord guide bobbin cover (with single hole)	2	XE8991-001
44	Embroidery bobbin thread	SA-EBT	EBT-CEN: X81164-001
45	Stabilizer material	SA519	BM3:X81175-101
46	Operation manual		XF0649-001
47	Quick reference guide	XF0584-001	
48	Embroidery unit carrying case	SA529 D6EUC: XC9862-052	
49	Hard case	XC7750-051	
50	Free-motion quilting foot "C"	XE0765-101	
51	Free-motion open toe quilting foot "O"	XE0767-001	
52	Free-motion echo quilting foot "E"	XE0766-001	
53	Circular attachment*		BL-CSA
54	Attachment screw (2pcs. one is extra)*	XE6022-001	
55	Pivot pin*	XE6016-001	
56	Template*	XE6024-001	
57	Braiding foot*	SA141	F021N
58	Cording foot*	SA110	F013N
59	Bobbin case (gray)**	2	XE8298-001
60	Bobbin cover (with mark)**	XF0750-001	

See Circular Attachment Instruction Manual for detailed instruction.

^{**} See Operation Manual Addendum for detailed instruction.



Memo

(For U.S.A. only)

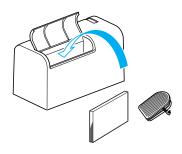
Foot controller: Model S

This foot controller can be used with this machine model NV5000.

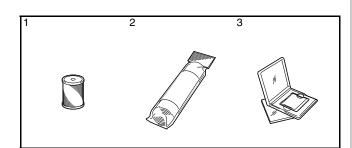


Memo

- Always use accessories recommended for this machine.
- The screw of the presser foot holder is available through your authorized dealer (Part code XA4813-051).
- Included accessories 35, 46, and 47 can be stored in the machine's hard case.



Options



		Part Code		
No.	Part Name	U.S.A./ Canada	Others	
1	Embroidery bobbin thread (White)	SA-EBT	X81164-001	
	Embroidery bobbin thread (Black)	SAEBT999	XC5520-001	
2	Stabilizer material	SA519	X81175-101	
	Water soluble stabilizer	SA520	X81267-001	
3	Embroidery card			
	No. 1 Alphabet	SA298	X58317-001	
	No. 2 Flower	SA299	X58321-001	
	No. 3 Dinosaur	SA300	X58362-001	
	No. 6 Moskowitz's World	SA303	X58497-001	
	No. 7 Country Life	SA304	X59322-001	
	No. 8 Holiday	SA305	X59357-001	
	No. 9 Hobby Craft	SA306	X59511-001	
	No. 10 Monogram Emblem	SA307	X59567-001	
	No. 11 Frame	SA311	XA0257-001	
	No. 12 Transportation	SA312	XA0275-001	
	No. 13 Sports Emblem	SA313	XA0517-001	
	No. 14 Large Floral	SA314	XA1223-001	
	No. 16 Cats & Dogs	SA316	XA1406-001	
	No. 19 Marine	SA319	XA2452-001	
	No. 20 Petite Designs	SA320	XA2869-001	
	No. 21 Needlework	SA321	XA2873-001	
	No. 22 Large Quilt	SA322	XA3431-001	
	No. 23 White on White	SA323	XA3430-001	
	No. 25 Horse	SA325	XA3791-001	

Part Code		t Code	
lo.	Part Name	U.S.A./ Canada	Others
3	No. 27 Birds	SA327	XA4289-001
	No. 28 Christmas	SA328	XA4502-001
	No. 29 Lace	SA329	XA4664-001
	No. 30 Wildlife Animals	SA330	XA4771-001
	No. 31 Large Flower II	SA331	XA5037-001
	No. 32 Musical Instruments	SA332	XA5386-001
	No. 33 Trees	SA333	XA5567-001
	No. 35 Cats & Dogs II	SA335	XA5629-001
	No. 36 Fruits & Vegetables	SA336	XA5659-001
	No. 37 Appliqué Alphabet	SA337	XA5753-001
	No. 38 Angel	SA338	XA5781-001
	No. 39 Doll Face	SA339	XA5978-001
	No. 40 Sports 3	SA340	XA6111-001
	No. 41 Renaissance Alphabet	SA341	XA6586-001
	No. 42 Farm	SA342	XA6733-001
	No. 43 Victorian	SA343	XA6769-001
	No. 44 Lace2	SA344	XA6849-001
	No. 45 Fancy Work	SA345	XA7770-001
	No. 46 Australian Animals	SA346	XA7893-001
	No. 47 Butterfly	SA347	XA8206-001
	No. 48 Australian Flowers	SA348	XA8250-001
	No. 49 Folk Art	SA349	XA8348-001
	No. 50 Fairy & Floral	SA350	XA8414-001
	No. 52 Bear Collections	SA352	XA8511-001
	No. 53 Scene	SA353	XA8936-001
	No. 54 Tea Time	SA354	XA9129-001
	No. 55 Gardening	SA355	XA9348-001
	No. 56 Asian	SA356	XC0025-001
	No. 57 Large Christmas	SA357	XC0057-001
	No. 58 New Quilt Traditions	SA358	XC0861-001
	No. 60 Summer Fun	SA360	XC1168-001
	No. 61 Blouse Embellishment	SA361	XC1304-001
	No. 62 Zodiac Signs	SA362	XC1502-001
	No. 63 Bunny	SA363	XC1646-001
	No. 64 Grand Mom	SA364	XC2176-001
	No. 65 Red Work	SA365	XC4220-001
	No. 66 Pop Mix	SA366	XC4819-001
	No. 67 Home Dec Collection	SA367	XC7048-001
	No. 68 Cross Stitch Collection1	SA368	XC7097-001
	No. 69 Sport Shirt Motifs	SA369	XC7274-001
	No. 70 Cross Stitch Collection2	SA370	XC7550-001



Memo

- You can use any of the brother embroidery cards listed above with your machine.
- Please be aware that some specifications may change without notice.



∠ Note

• Embroidery cards purchased in foreign countries may not work with your machine.



Chapter 1Getting Ready

TURNING THE MACHINE ON/OFF8	
LCD SCREEN9	
■ Key Functions10	
Using the Machine Setting Mode Key12	
■ Adjusting Screen Brightness15	
■ Choosing the Display Language16	
Using the Machine Operation Mode Key17	
Using the Pattern Explanation Key18	
LOWER THREADING19	
Winding the Bobbin19	
■ Using the Supplemental Spool Pin19	
■ Using the Spool Pin21	
Setting the Bobbin22	
Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread23	
UPPER THREADING25	
Threading Using the "Automatic Threading" Button25	
Threading Manually27	
Using the Twin Needle Mode29	
Using Threads that Unwind Quickly31	
■ Using the Spool Net31	
■ Using the Vertical Spool Pin31	
CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT32	
Removing the Presser Foot32	
Attaching the Presser Foot32	
Attaching the Walking Foot33	
CHANGING THE NEEDLE34	
■ About the Needle	

TURNING THE MACHINE ON/OFF

A WARNING

- Use only regular household electricity as the power source. Using other power sources may result in fire, electric shock, or damage to the machine.
- Turn the main power to OFF and remove the plug in the following circumstances:

When you are away from the machine

After using the machine

When the power fails during use

When the machine does not operate correctly due to a bad connection or a disconnection

During electrical storms

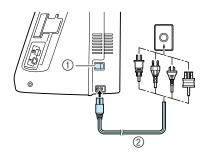
A CAUTION

- Do not use extension cords or multi-plug adapters with many other appliances plugged in to them. Fire or electric shock may result.
- Do not touch the plug with wet hands. Electric shock may result.
- When unplugging the machine, always turn the main power to OFF first. Always grasp the plug to remove it from the outlet. Pulling on the cord may damage the cord, or lead to fire or electric shock.
- Do not allow the power cord to be cut, damaged, modified, forcefully bent, pulled, twisted, or bundled. Do not place heavy objects on the cord. Do not subject the cord to heat. These things may damage the cord, or cause fire or electric shock. If the cord or plug is damaged, take the machine to your authorized dealer for repairs before continuing use.
- Unplug the power cord if the machine is not to be used for a long period of time. Otherwise, a fire may result.
- When leaving the machine unattended, either the main switch of the machine should be turned to OFF or the plug must be removed from the socket-outlet.
- When servicing the machine or when removing covers, either the machine or the electrical set must be unplugged.
- For U.S.A. only

This appliance has a polarized plug (one blade wider than the other). To reduce the risk of electrical shock, this plug is intended to fit in a polarized outlet only one way.

If the plug does not fit fully in the outlet, reverse the plug. If it still does not fit, contact a qualified electrician to install the proper outlet. Do not modify the plug in any way.

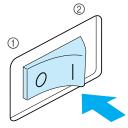
Insert the power cord into the power cord jack connector, then insert the plug into a wall outlet.



- Main power switch
- 2 Power cord



Turn the main power switch to "I" to turn on the machine.



- ① OFF
- ② ON
- Turn the main power switch to "O" to turn off the machine.

LCD SCREEN

When switching on the machine, the screen will display the name of the machine. Touch the screen to display the utility stitch. Either "1-01 Straight stitch (Left)" or "1-03 Straight stitch (Middle)" is selected, depending on the setting selected in the setting screen (See page 12).

Press a key with your finger to select the stitch pattern, to select a machine function, or to select an operation indicated on the key.



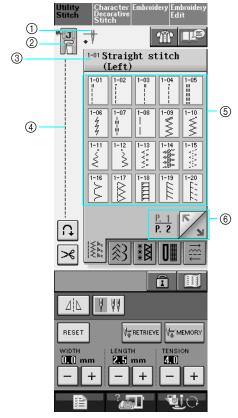
∠ Note

When the straight stitch needle plate is on the machine, the needle will automatically move to the middle position.

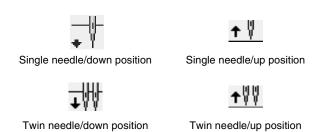


Memo

 Only touch the screen with your finger or the included touch pen. Do not use a sharp pencil, screwdriver, or other hard or sharp object. It is not necessary to press hard on the screen. Pressing too hard or using a sharp object may damage the screen.

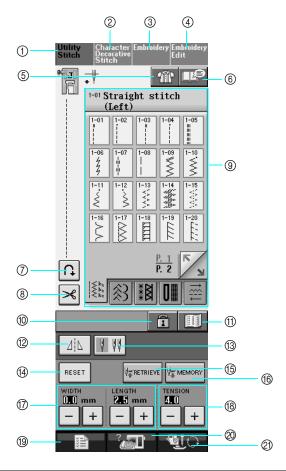


① Shows single or twin needle mode setting, and the needle stop position.



- ② Shows the presser foot code. Attach the presser foot indicated in this display before sewing.
- ③ Shows the name and code number of the selected stitch.
- 4 Shows a preview of the selected stitch.
- ⑤ Shows the stitch patterns.
- ⑤ Shows additional pages that can be displayed.
- * All key functions of the LCD are explained in the "key functions" table on the following page.

■ Key Functions



No.	Display	Key Name	Explanation	Page
1	Utility Stitch	Utility stitch key	Press this key to select a straight stitch, zigzag stitch, buttonhole, blind hem stitch, or other stitches commonly used in garment construction.	48
2	Character Decorative Stitch	Character/Decorative stitch key	Press this key to select character or decorative stitch patterns.	98
3	Embroidery	Embroidery key	Attach the embroidery unit and press this key to sew embroidery.	130
4	Embroidery Edit	Embroidery edit key	Press this key to combine embroidery patterns. With the embroidery edit functions, you can also create original embroidery patterns or frame patterns.	177
5	111	Sewing type selection key	Press this key when you need help selecting the appropriate stitch pattern for the sewing application and when you need instructions on how to sew the stitch pattern. This key is very helpful for beginners.	51
6		Pattern explanation key	Press this key to see an explanation of the selected pattern.	18
7	U	Automatic reinforcement stitch key	Press this key to use the automatic reinforcement stitching (reverse stitching) setting. If you select this setting before sewing, the machine will automatically sew reinforcement stitches at the beginning and end of sewing (depending on the pattern, the machine may sew reverse stitches).	44
8	\rtimes	Automatic thread cutting key	Press this key to set the automatic thread cutting function. Set the automatic thread cutting function before sewing to have the machine automatically sew reinforcement stitches at the beginning and end of sewing (depending on the pattern, the machine may sew reverse stitches) and trim the threads after sewing.	45

No.	Display	Key Name	Explanation	Page
9	-01 Straight stitch (Left) -02 -03 -03 -04 -04 -05	Stitch selection display	Press the key of the pattern you want to sew. Use to change selection screens.	48
100	Î	Screen lock key	Press this key to lock the screen.When the screen is locked, the various settings, such as the stitch width and stitch length, are locked and cannot be changed. Press this key again to unlock the settings.	46
11)		Image key	Press this key to display an enlarged image of the selected stitch pattern.	49
12		Mirror image key	Press this key to create a mirror image of the selected stitch pattern. If the key display is light gray, a mirror image of the selected stitch pattern cannot be sewn.	49
(3)	9 99	Needle mode selection key (single/ double)	Press this key to select twin needle sewing mode. The sewing mode changes between single needle mode and twin needle mode each time you press the key. If the key display is light gray, the selected stitch pattern cannot be sewn in twin needle mode.	29
14	RESET	Reset key	Press this key to return the selected stitch pattern's saved settings to the original settings.	42-43
15	V₩ RETRIEVE	Retrieve key	Press this key to retrieve a saved pattern.	51
16	∀ ₩ MEMORY	Manual memory key	Change the stitch pattern settings (zigzag width and stitch length, thread tension, automatic thread cutting or automatic reinforcement stitching, etc.), then save them by pressing this key. Five sets of settings can be saved for a single stitch pattern.	50
17	UIDTH LENGTH 2.5 mm	Stitch width and stitch length key	Shows the zigzag width and stitch length settings of the currently selected stitch pattern. You can use the plus and minus keys to adjust the zigzag width and stitch length settings.	42
18	TENSION (4.0)	Thread tension key	Shows the thread tension setting of the currently selected stitch pattern. The thread tension is usually set automatically. You can use the plus and minus keys to change the thread tension settings.	43
19		Machine setting mode key	Press this key to change the needle stop position, turn the buzzer ON/OFF, adjust the pattern or screen, and change other machine settings.	12
20	-? @1 '	Machine operation mode key	Press this key to see explanations for upper threading, winding the bobbin, changing the presser foot, and how to use the machine.	17
21		Presser foot/Needle exchange key	Press this key before changing the needle, the presser foot, etc. This key locks all key and button functions to prevent operation of the machine.	32-35



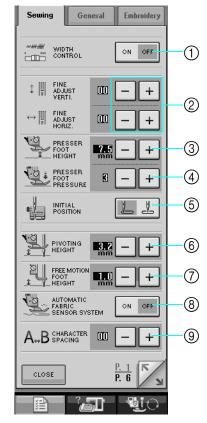
Using the Machine Setting Mode Key

Press to change the default machine settings (needle stop position, embroidery speed, opening display, etc.) Press Sewing, General or Embroidery to display the different settings screens.



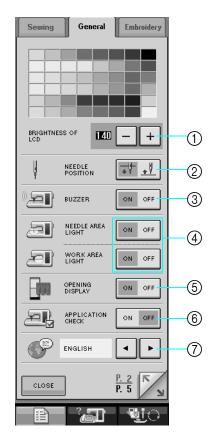
- This function will be available in future technology upgrades.
- Press or to display a different settings screen.

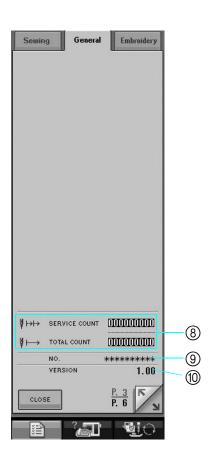
Sewing settings



- ① Select whether to use the sewing speed controller to determine the zigzag width (see page 70).
- ② Make adjustments to character or decorative stitch patterns (see page 103).
- 3 Adjust the presser foot height. (Select the height of the presser foot when the presser foot is raised.)
- 4 Adjust the presser foot pressure. (The higher the number, the higher the pressure will be. Set the pressure at 3 for normal sewing.)
- Select whether "1-01 Straight stitch (Left)" or "1-03 Straight stitch (Middle)" is the utility stitch that is automatically selected when the machine is turned on.
- ⑥ Change the height of the presser foot when sewing is stopped when the pivot setting is selected (see page 53). Adjust the presser foot to one of the three heights (3.2 mm, 5.0 mm and 7.5 mm).
- Thange the height of the presser foot when the machine is set to free-motion sewing mode (see page 83).
- When set to "ON", the thickness of the fabric is automatically detected by an internal sensor while sewing, so the fabric can be fed smoothly (see pages 47 and 55).
- Adjust the character spacing on Character/Decorative stitch (see page 101).

General settings





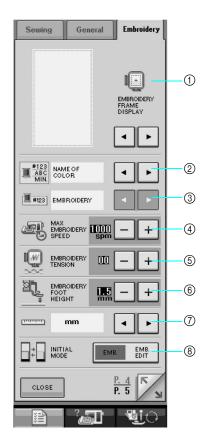
- ① Change the brightness of the LCD (see page 15).
- ② Select the needle stop position (the needle position when the machine is not operating) to be up or down.
- 3 Turn the buzzer ON/OFF.
- 4 Turn the Needle Area and Work Area Lights ON/OFF.
- ⑤ Turn the opening screen display ON/OFF.
- 6 Use when running an application.
- ⑦ Change the display language (see page 16).
- ® Display the service count and the total number of embroidery stitches. The service count is a reminder to take your machine in for regular servicing. (Contact your authorized dealer for details.)
- (9) The "NO." is the number for the embroidery and sewing machine.
- 10 Display the program version.

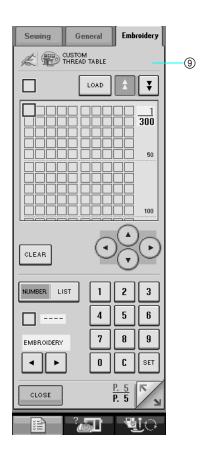


viemo

The latest version of software is installed in your machine. Check with your local authorized Brother dealer or at www.brother.com for notification of available updates (see page 224).

Embroidery settings





- ① Select from among 10 embroidery frame displays (see page 158).
- ② Change the thread color display on the embroidery screen; thread number, color name or each time to embroider (see page 156).
- ③ When the thread number #123 is selected, select among six thread brands (see page 156).
- 4 Adjust the maximum embroidery speed setting (see page 156).
- ⑤ Adjust the thread tension for embroidering.
- ® Select the height of the embroidery foot "W" during embroidering (see page 138).
- ⑦ Change the display units (mm/inch).
- ® Change the initial mode of the display (embroidery/embroidery edit).
- ③ Customize the thread color numbers (see page 188).

■ Adjusting Screen Brightness



↓ Note

- All or part of the screen may sometimes become darker or lighter because of changes in the air temperature or other changes in the environment around the screen. This is normal and is not a sign of malfunction. Adjust the screen if it is difficult to read.
- The screen may be dark immediately after turning on the power. This is a function of the LCD back light screen, and it is not a sign of malfunction. The screen will return to its normal level of brightness after approximately 10 minutes.
- If you are not directly in front of the machine when you view the LCD, the colors may appear to change or the screen may be difficult to see. This is a characteristic of the LCD, and not a sign of damage or malfunction. For best results operate the screen while sitting in front of the machine.



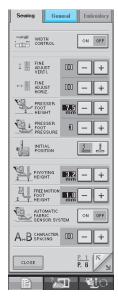
Press



→ The Sewing settings screen appears.







→ The General settings screen appears.







On the BRIGHTNESS OF LCD display, use



+ and - to adjust the screen

brightness.

- Press to make the screen darker.
- Press to make the screen lighter.



① Brightness of LCD display



Press





■ Choosing the Display Language



→ The Sewing settings screen appears.





ightarrow The General settings screen appears.



* Choose from the following languages: [ENGLISH], [GERMAN], [FRENCH], [ITALIAN], [DUTCH], [SPANISH], [DANISH], [FINNISH], [SWEDISH], [PORTUGEUSE], [RUSSIAN], [NORWEGIAN] or [JAPANESE].

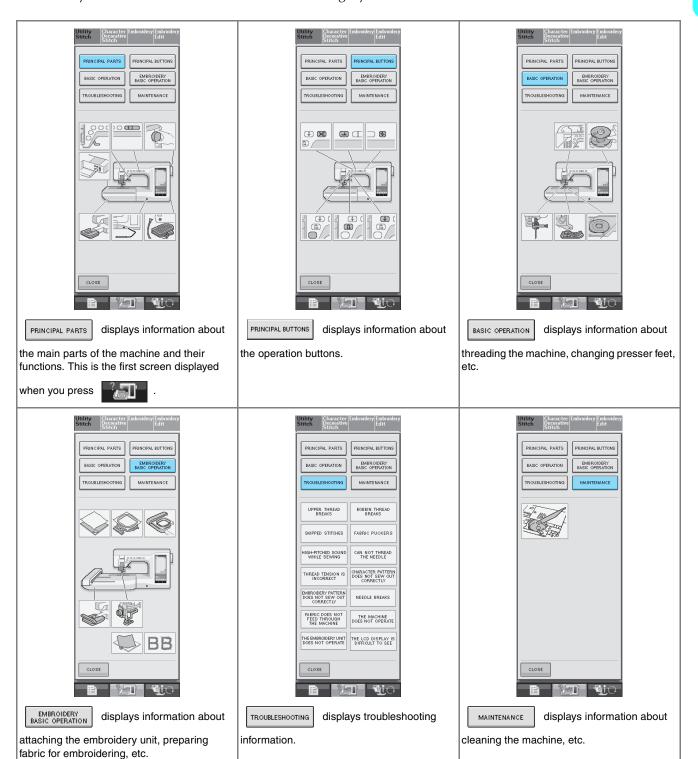


① Display language



Using the Machine Operation Mode Key

Press to open the screen shown below. Six categories are displayed at the top of the screen. Press a key to see more information about that category.



Example: Displaying information about upper threading

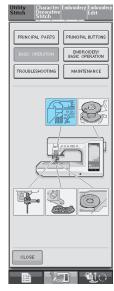
Press

Press BASIC OPERATION

→ The lower half of the screen will change.



(upper threading).



The screen shows instructions for threading the machine.

- Read the instructions.
 - Press to see a video of the displayed instructions
 - to view the next page.





Using the Pattern Explanation Key 📭

If you want to know more about the uses of a stitch pattern, select the pattern and press an explanation of the stitch selection.

Example: Displaying information about









ightarrow The screen shows information about







LOWER THREADING

Winding the Bobbin





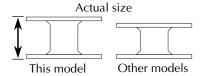


in that order to display a video example of bobbin winding on the LCD (see page 18). Follow the steps explained below to complete the operation.

CAUTION

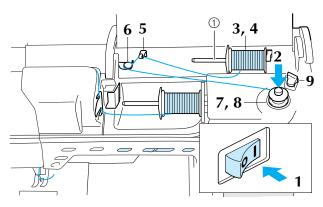
The enclosed bobbin was designed specifically for this sewing machine. If bobbins from other models are used, the machine will not operate correctly. Use only the enclosed bobbin or bobbins of the same type (part code: SA156, SFB).

11.5 mm (approx. 7/16 inch)



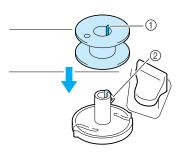
■ Using the Supplemental Spool Pin

With this machine, you can wind the bobbin during sewing. While using the main spool pin to sew embroidery, you can conveniently wind the bobbin using the supplemental spool pin.

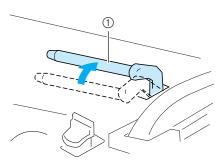


Supplemental spool pin

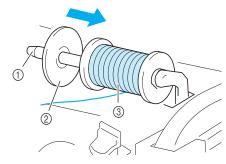
- Turn the main power to ON.
- Align the groove in the bobbin with the spring on the bobbin winder shaft, and set the bobbin on the shaft.



- 1) Groove of the bobbin
- ② Spring on the shaft
- Set the supplemental spool pin in the "up" position.



- ① Supplemental spool pin
- Place the spool of thread on the supplemental spool pin, so that thread unrolls from the front. Then push the spool cap onto the spool pin as far as possible to secure the thread spool.



- ① Spool pin
- ② Spool cap
- Thread spool

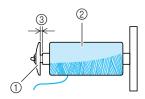
CAUTION

- If the thread spool and/or spool cap are set incorrectly, the thread may tangle on the spool pin and cause the needle to break.
- Use the spool cap (large, medium, or small) that is closest in size to the thread spool. If a spool cap smaller than the thread spool is used, the thread may become caught in the slit on the end of the spool and cause the needle to break.

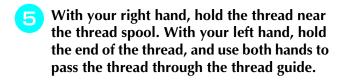


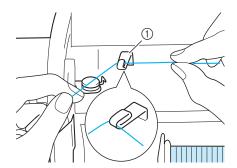
Memo

When sewing with fine, cross-wound thread, use the small spool cap, and leave a small space between the cap and the thread spool.



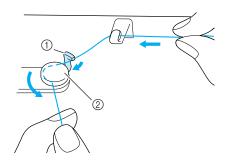
- ① Spool cap (small)
- ② Thread spool (cross-wound thread)
- ③ Space



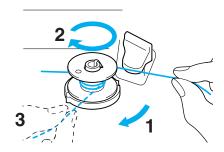


1 Thread guide

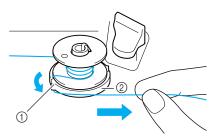
Pass the thread under the pin, and pass the thread around the pretension disk making sure that the thread is under the pretension disk.



- ② Pretension disk
- Wind the thread clockwise around the bobbin 4-5 times.



Pass the end of the thread through the guide slit in the bobbin winder seat, and pull the thread to the right to cut the thread with the cutter.



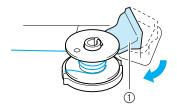
- 1 Guide slit
- ② Bobbin winder seat



CAUTION

Be sure to follow the process described. If the thread is not cut with the cutter, and the bobbin is wound, when the thread runs low it may tangle around the bobbin and cause the needle to break.

Set the bobbin holder to the left, until it clicks into place.



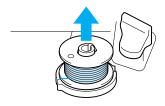
① Bobbin holder (switch)



Memo

When the bobbin holder is set to the left, it works as a switch to make the bobbin wind automatically.

- → The bobbin starts winding automatically and stops rotating when it is done winding. The bobbin holder will return to the original position.
- Cut the thread with the cutter and remove the bobbin.





Memo

When removing the bobbin, do not pull on the bobbin winder seat. Doing so could loosen or remove the bobbin winder seat, and could result in damage to the machine.



CAUTION

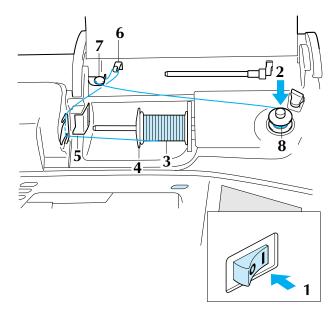
Setting the bobbin improperly may cause the thread tension to loosen, breaking the needle and possibly resulting in injury.



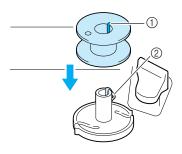


■ Using the Spool Pin

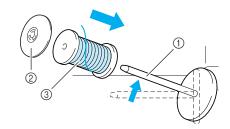
You can use the main spool pin to wind the bobbin before sewing. You cannot use this spool pin to wind the bobbin while sewing.



- Turn the main power to ON.
- Align the groove in the bobbin with the spring on the bobbin winder shaft, and set the bobbin on the shaft.

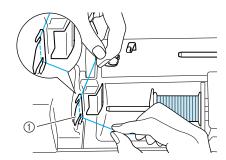


- 1) Groove of the bobbin
- ② Spring on the shaft
- Pivot the spool pin so that it angles upward. Set the thread spool on the spool pin so that the thread unwinds from the front of the spool.

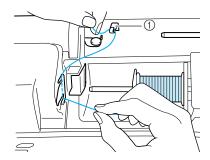


- Spool pin
- Spool cap
- ③ Thread spool

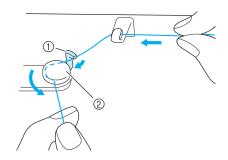
- Push the spool cap onto the spool pin as far as possible, then return the spool pin to its original position.
- Holding the thread with your hands, slide the thread into the grooves on the thread guide plate.



- 1) Thread guide plate
- Pass the thread through the thread guide.



- ① Thread guide
- Pass the thread under the pin. Then pass the thread around the pretension disk making sure that the thread is under the pretension disk.



- ① Thread guide
- ② Pin
- ③ Pretension disk
- Follow steps 7 through 10 on page 20 through 21.

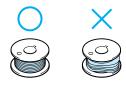
Setting the Bobbin

ress \rightarrow basic operation \rightarrow

in that order to display a video example of the operation on the LCD (see page 18). Follow the steps explained below to complete the operation.

A CAUTION

 Use a bobbin thread that has been correctly wound. Otherwise, the needle may break or the thread tension will be incorrect.



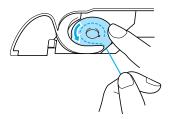
- Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to raise the presser foot.
- Slide the bobbin cover latch to the right.



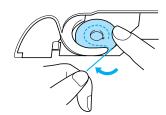
- 1) Bobbin cover
- ② Latch
- → The bobbin cover opens.
- Remove the bobbin cover.
- Hold the bobbin with your right hand and hold the end of the thread with your left hand.



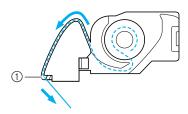
Set the bobbin in the bobbin case so that the thread unwinds to the left.



Hold the bobbin lightly with your right hand, and then guide the thread with your left hand.



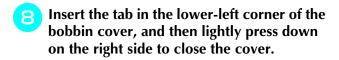
Pass the thread through the guide, and then pull the thread out towards the front.



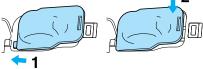
- 1) Cutter
- → The cutter cuts the thread.

CAUTION

Be sure to hold down the bobbin with your finger and unwind the bobbin thread correctly. Otherwise, the thread may break or the thread tension will be incorrect.







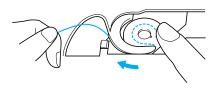
Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread

There may be some sewing applications where you want to pull up the bobbin thread; for example, when making gathers, darts, or doing free motion quilting or embroidery.

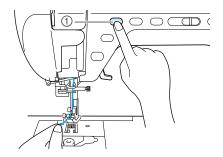


You can pull up the bobbin thread after threading the upper thread (see "UPPER THREAD-ING" on page 25).

- Guide the bobbin thread through the groove, following the arrow in the illustration.
 - Do not cut the thread with the cutter.
 - Do not replace the bobbin cover.

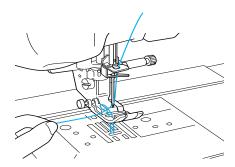


While holding the upper thread, press the needle position button to lower the needle.

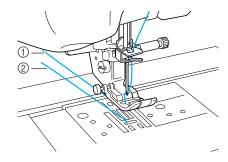


① Needle position button

- Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.
- Gently pull the upper thread, and a loop of the bobbin thread will come out of the hole in the needle plate.



Pull up the bobbin thread, then pass it under the presser foot and pull it about 100 mm (approx. 3-4 inches) toward the back of the machine, making it even with the upper thread.



- ① Upper thread
- ② Bobbin thread
- **6** Replace the bobbin cover.

UPPER THREADING

Threading Using the "Automatic Threading" Button

Press







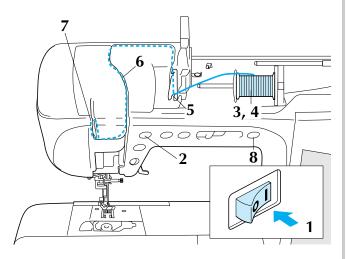
in that order to display a video example of the operation on the LCD (see page 18). Follow the steps explained below to complete the operation.

CAUTION

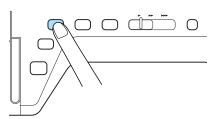
- Be sure to thread the machine properly. Improper threading can cause the thread to tangle and break the needle, leading to injury.
- When using accessories not included with this machine, attach the accessory to the machine after threading the machine.



- The automatic threading function can be used with sewing machine needles 75/11 through 100/16.
- Thread such as transparent nylon monofilament thread and thread with a thickness of 130/20 or thicker cannot be used with the automatic threading function.
- The automatic threading function cannot be used with the wing needle or the twin needle.
- If the automatic threading function cannot be used, see "Threading Manually" on page 27.



- Turn the main power to ON.
- Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.

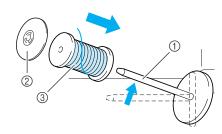




Note

If you try to thread the needle automatically without raising the needle, the thread may not thread correctly.

Pivot the spool pin so that it angles upward. Set the thread spool on the spool pin so that the thread unwinds from the front of the spool.



- Spool pin
- ② Spool cap
- ③ Thread spool
- Push the spool cap onto the spool pin as far as possible, then return the spool pin to its original position.

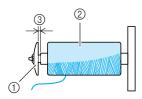
CAUTION

- If the thread spool and/or spool cap are set incorrectly, the thread may tangle on the spool pin and cause the needle to break.
- Use the spool cap (large, medium, or small) that is closest in size to the thread spool. If a spool cap smaller than the thread spool is used, the thread may become caught in the slit on the end of the spool and cause the needle to break.

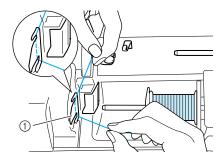


Memo

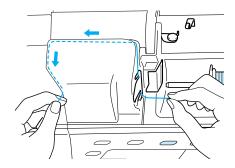
When sewing with fine, cross-wound thread, use the small spool cap, and leave a small space between the cap and the thread spool.



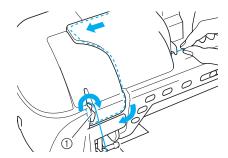
- ① Spool cap (small)
- ② Thread spool (cross-wound thread)
- ③ Space
- Holding the thread with your hands, slide the thread into the grooves on the thread guide plate.



- ① Thread guide plate
- While holding the thread in your right hand, pass the thread through the thread guide in the direction indicated.

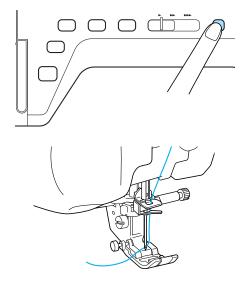


When finished pulling the thread through the thread guide, cut the thread and leave the thread in position.



① Cutter

Press the "Automatic Threading" button to have the machine automatically thread the needle.

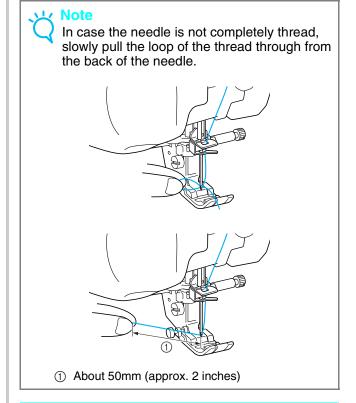


ightarrow The upper threading is finished.



Memo

When the "Automatic Threading" button is pressed, the presser foot will be automatically lowered.





wemo

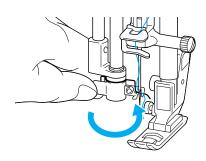
If the needle could not be threaded or the thread was not passed through the needle bar thread guides, perform the procedure again starting from step 3.



↓ Note

When the "Automatic Threading" button is pressed, the presser foot will be automatically lowered.

If you are using an incorrect needle and thread combination, the hook may sometimes get caught in the needle. If this happens, remove the hook from the needle as described below.



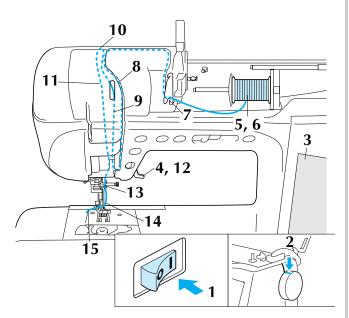


A CAUTION

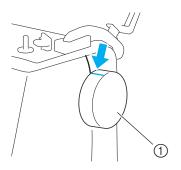
The needle thread carrier will automatically thread the needle when the "Automatic Threading" button is pressed. Be sure to keep your hands and other items away from the needle area, otherwise injuries may occur.

Threading Manually

Automatic threading cannot be used when using the wing needle, the twin needle, or special thread with a thickness of 130/20 or thicker. In these cases, thread the needle as described below.



- Turn the main power to ON.
- Turn the handwheel so that the line on the machine is aligned with the line on the handwheel.



1) Line on handwheel



Memo

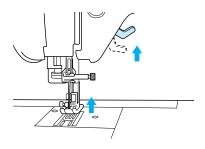
If the line on the machine is not aligned with the line on the handwheel, the sewing machine cannot be threaded. Check that the line on the handwheel is facing up as shown in the illustration above.



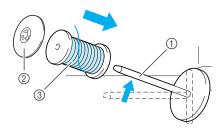
→ The key appears as



Raise the presser foot lever.



Pivot the spool pin so that it angles upward. Set the thread spool on the spool pin so that the thread unwinds from the front of the spool.



- ① Spool pin
- Spool cap
- ③ Thread spool

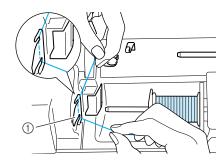




Push the spool cap onto the spool pin as far as possible, then return the spool pin to its original position.

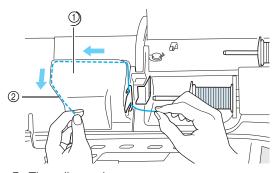
CAUTION

- If the thread spool and/or spool cap are set incorrectly, the thread may tangle on the spool pin and cause the needle to break.
- Use the spool cap (large, medium, or small) that is closest in size to the thread spool. If a spool cap smaller than the thread spool is used, the thread may become caught in the slit on the end of the spool and cause the needle to break.
- Holding the thread with both hands, slide the thread into the grooves on the thread guide plate.



- 1) Thread guide plate
- While holding the thread in your right hand, use your left hand to pull the thread toward the threading path cover, then pass it along the thread path as shown in the illustration.

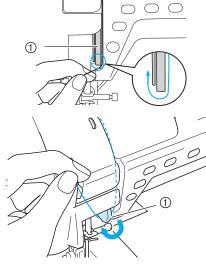
Be sure to pass the thread along the right side of the thread path guide.



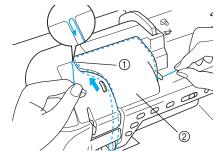
- Threading path cover
- ② Thread path guide



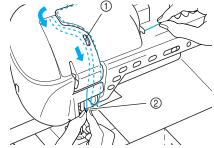
Pull the thread under the thread path guide.



- 1 Thread path guide
- Pull back up the thread along the left side of the thread path guide to the top left corner of the threading path cover.



- 1) Top left corner
- ② Threading path cover
- Pull the thread back down to the needle bar along the left side of the thread path guide.
 - Make sure the thread is hooked at the top corner and positioned behind the transparent front cover.



- ① Thread take-up lever check window
- ② Transparent front cover

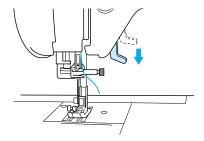


1 Take-up lever

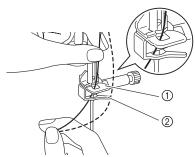
② Thread

Look through the thread take-up lever check window and check that the thread is correctly fed through the take-up lever, turning the handwheel toward you.

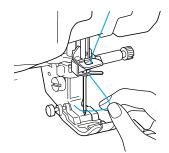
12 Lower the presser foot lever.



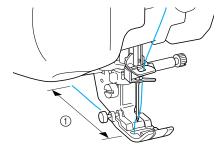
Holding the thread with both hands, pass the thread through both the upper and lower needle bar thread guides.



- ① Needle bar thread guide (upper)
- ② Needle bar thread guide (lower)
- Pass the thread through the eye of the needle from front to back.



Pass the thread through the presser foot, and then pull out about 100-150 mm (approx. 4-6 inches) of thread toward the back of the machine.



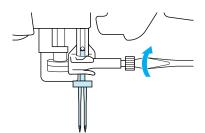
- ① 100-150 mm (approx. 4-6 inches)
- Press to unlock all keys and buttons.

Using the Twin Needle Mode

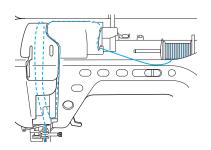
The twin needle can only be used for patterns that show after being selected. Before you select a stitch pattern, make sure the stitch can be sewn in the twin needle mode (refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual).

CAUTION

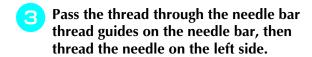
- Use only twin needles made for this machine (part code X59296-151). Other needles could break, resulting in damage.
- Be sure to set the twin needle mode when using the twin needle. Using the twin needle while the machine is in single needle mode could cause the needle to break, resulting in damage.
- Do not sew with bent needles. The needle could break and cause injury.
- When using the twin needle, be sure to use presser foot "J" only.
- When the twin needle is used, bunched stitches may occur depending on the types of fabric and thread that are used.
 If this occurs, use monogramming foot "N".
- Press and install the twin needle (see "CHANGING THE NEEDLE" on page 34).

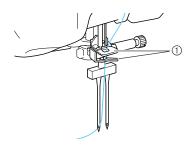


- Manually thread the machine.
 - * Follow the steps for threading a single needle for the first threading (see "Threading Manually" on page 27)







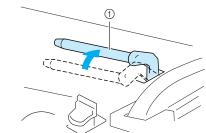


① Needle bar thread guides

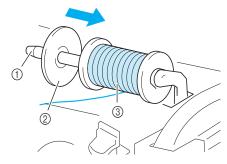


Note

- The "Automatic Threading" button cannot be used. Manually thread the twin needle from front to back. Using the "Automatic Threading" button may result in damage to the machine.
- Pull up the supplemental spool pin and set it in the up position.

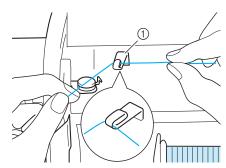


- 1 Supplemental spool pin
- Place the additional spool of thread on the supplemental spool pin, so that the thread unwinds from the front. Then push the spool cap onto the spool pin as far as possible to secure the thread spool.

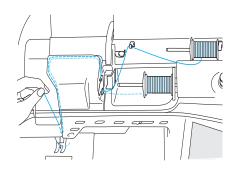


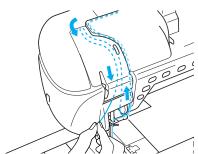
- ① Spool pin
- ② Spool cap
- ③ Thread spool

- Hold the thread from the spool with both hands, and place the thread in the thread guide.
 - Do not place the thread in the bobbin winding thread guide.

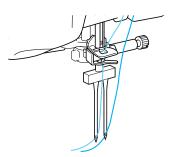


- ① Thread guide
- Pass the thread through the thread guide plate, following the sequence as described below.





Do not pass the thread in the needle bar thread guides on the needle bar. Thread the needle on the right side.



Press



Select a stitch pattern. (Example:

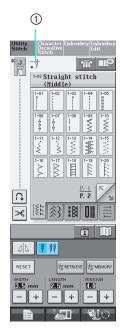


- Refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual for proper stitch to use with presser
- → The Selected stitch is displayed.



If the key is light gray after selecting the stitch, the selected stitch cannot be sewn in the twin needle mode.

Press to select the twin needle mode.



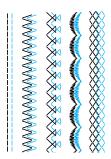
- 1) Single needle/twin needle setting
- appears.



CAUTION

Be sure to set the twin needle mode when using the twin needle. Using the twin needle while the machine is in single needle mode could cause the needle to break, resulting in damage.

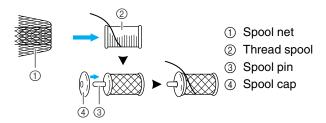
Start sewing. Sample of Twin Needle Sewing



Using Threads that Unwind Quickly

■ Using the Spool Net

If using transparent nylon thread, metallic thread, or other strong thread, place the included spool net over the spool before using it. When using these threads, threading must be done manually. If the spool net is too long, fold it once to match it to the spool size before placing it over the spool.



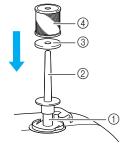


- When threading the spool with the spool net on, the thread may not come out enough. Make sure that 5-6 cm (approx. 2 - 2-1/2 inches) of thread are pulled out.
- It may be necessary to adjust the thread tension when using the spool net.

■ Using the Vertical Spool Pin

Use the vertical spool pin when using an irregularly shaped thread spool, and when sewing or embroidering with metallic thread.

Insert the vertical spool pin into the end of the bobbin winder shaft.



- Bobbin winder shaft
- ② Vertical spool pin
- ③ Spool felt
- (4) Thread spool



Install the spool felt and the thread spool in that order, and then thread the upper thread.



Memo

- When setting the thread spool, set it so that the thread winds off from the front of the spool.
- If using metallic thread, we recommend that you use a 90/14 home sewing machine nee-
- · This method keeps the thread from twisting as it comes off the spool pin.



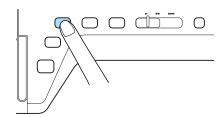
CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT

A CAUTION

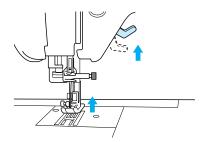
- Always press on the screen before changing the presser foot. If with is not pressed and the "Start/Stop" button or another button is pressed, the machine will start and may cause injury.
- Always use the correct presser foot for the selected stitch pattern. If the wrong presser foot is used, the needle may strike the presser foot and bend or break, and may cause injury.
- Only use presser feet made for this machine. Using other presser feet may lead to accident or injury.

Removing the Presser Foot

Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.



- Press .
 - → The key appears as
- Raise the presser foot lever.



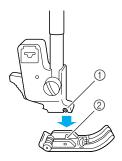
Press the black button on the presser foot holder and remove the presser foot.



- 1) Black button
- ② Presser foot holder

Attaching the Presser Foot

Place the new presser foot under the holder, aligning the foot pin with the notch in the holder. Lower the presser foot lever so that the presser foot pin snaps into the notch in the holder.



- 1) Notch
- ② Pin
- Press to unlock all keys and buttons.
- **3** Raise the presser foot lever.

Attaching the Walking Foot

The walking foot holds the fabric between the presser foot and the feed dogs to feed the fabric. This enables you to have better fabric control when sewing difficult fabrics (such as quilting or velvet) or fabrics that slip easily (such as vinyl cloth, leather, or synthetic leather).

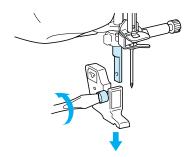


When sewing with the walking foot, sew at medium to low speeds.

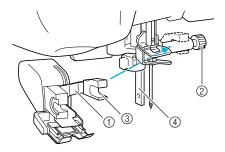


Memo

- The walking foot can only be used with straight or zigzag stitch patterns. Reverse stitches cannot be sewn with the walking foot. Only select straight or zigzag stitch patterns with reinforcement stitches.
- Follow the steps in "Removing the Presser Foot" on the previous page.
- Loosen the screw of the presser foot holder to remove the presser foot holder.



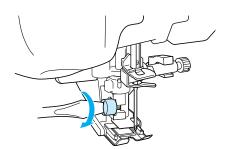
Set the operation lever of the walking foot so that the needle clamp screw is set between the fork, and position the walking foot on the presser foot bar.



- Operation lever
- ② Needle clamp screw
- ③ Fork
- (4) Presser foot bar



Lower the presser foot lever. Insert the screw, and tighten the screw securely with the screwdriver.





CAUTION

- Use the screwdriver to tighten the screw securely. If the screw is loose, the needle may strike the presser foot and cause injury.
- Be sure to turn the handwheel toward the front of the machine to check that the needle does not strike the presser foot. If the needle strikes the presser foot, injury may result.

CHANGING THE NEEDLE

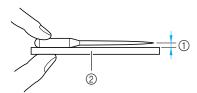
A CAUTION

- Always press on the screen before changing the needle. If is not pressed and the Start/ Stop button or another operation button is pressed accidentally, the machine will start and injury may result.
- Use only sewing machine needles made for home use. Other needles may bend or break and may cause injury.
- Never sew with a bent needle. A bent needle will easily break and may cause injury.

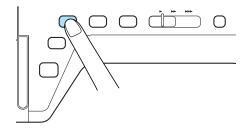


Memo

To check the needle correctly, place the flat side of the needle on a flat surface. Check the needle from the top and the sides. Throw away any bent needles.



- 1) Parallel space
- ② Level surface (bobbin cover, glass, etc.)
- Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.

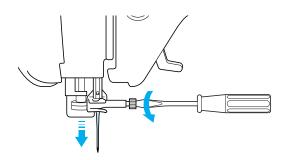




 \rightarrow The key appears as



Use the screwdriver to turn the screw toward the front of the machine and loosen the screw, then remove the needle.





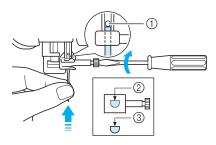
machine.

 Do not apply pressure to the needle clamp screw. Doing so may damage the needle or





With the flat side of the needle facing the back, insert the new needle all the way to the top of the needle stopper (viewing window) in the needle clamp. Use a screwdriver to securely tighten the needle clamp screw.



- ① Needle stopper
- ② Hole for setting the needle
- ③ Flat side of needle



A CAUTION

- Be sure to push in the needle until it touches the stopper, and securely tighten the needle clamp screw with a screwdriver. If the needle is not completely inserted or the needle clamp screw is loose, the needle may break or the machine may be damaged.
- Press to unlock all keys and buttons.



■ About the Needle

The sewing machine needle is probably the most important part of the sewing machine. Choosing the proper needle for your sewing project will result in a beautiful finish and fewer problems. Below are some things to keep in mind about needles.

- The smaller the needle number, the finer the needle. As the numbers increase, the needles get thicker.
- Use fine needles with lightweight fabrics, and thicker needles with heavyweight fabrics.
- To avoid skipped stitches, use ball point needle (golden colored) 90/14 with stretch fabrics.
- To avoid skipped stitches, use ball point needle (golden colored) 90/14 when sewing character or decorative stitches.
- Use needle 75/11 for embroidery. Use ball point needle 75/107 for embroidering patterns with short jump stitches such as alphabet characters when the thread trimming function is turned on. Ball point needles (golden colored) 90/14 are not recommended for embroidery, as they may bend or break, causing injury.
- It is recommended that a 90/14 needle should be used when embroidering on heavyweight fabrics or stabilizing products (for example, denim, puffy foam, etc.). A 75/11 needle may bend or break, which could result in injury.

■ Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations

The following table provides information concerning the appropriate thread and needle for various fabrics. Please refer to this table when selecting a thread and needle for the fabric you wish to use.

Fabric		Thread	Size of needle		
		Туре	Size		
Medium weight fabric	Broadcloth	Cotton	60 - 80	75/11 - 90/14	
	Taffeta	Synthetic mercerized	60 - 80	1	
	Flannel, Gabardine	Silk or silk finished	50	1	
Lightweight fabric	Lawn, Batiste	Cotton	60 - 80	65/9 - 75/11	
	Georgette	Synthetic mercerized	60 - 80	1	
	Challis, Satin	Silk	50	1	
Heavyweight fabric	Denim	Cotton	30 - 50	90/14 - 100/16	
	Corduroy	Synthetic mercerized	50	1	
	Tweed	Silk	50	1	
Stretch fabric	Jersey	Thread for knits	50 - 60	Ball point needle	
	Tricot			(golden colored) 75/11 - 90/14	
For top stitching	·	Synthetic mercerized	30	90/14 - 100/16	
		Silk	30	1	



Memo

For transparent nylon thread, always use needle 90/14 - 100/16.

The same thread is usually used for the bobbin thread and upper threading.

A CAUTION

• Be sure to follow the needle, thread, and fabric combinations listed in the table. Using an improper combination, especially a heavyweight fabric (i.e., denim) with a small needle (i.e., 65/9 - 75/11), may cause the needle to bend or break, and lead to injury. Also, the seam may be uneven, the fabric may pucker, or the machine may skip stitches.



Chapter 2Sewing Basics

SEWING3	8
Sewing a Stitch3	88
■ Using the Foot Controller	39
Sewing Reinforcement Stitches4	Ю
Sewing Curves4	Ю
Changing Sewing Direction4	Ю
Sewing Heavyweight Fabrics4	11
■ If the Fabric does not Fit under the Presser Foot4	‡ 1
■ If the Fabric does not Feed at the Beginning of Stitching4	‡ 1
Sewing Lightweight Fabrics4	ŀ1
STITCH SETTINGS4	2
Setting the Stitch Width4	12
Setting the Stitch Length4	12
Setting the Thread Tension4	13
■ Proper Thread Tension4	1 3
■ Upper Thread is Too Tight4	13
■ Upper Thread is Too Loose4	13
USEFUL FUNCTIONS4	4
Automatic Reinforcement Stitching4	! 4
Automatic Thread Cutting4	1 5
■ Using the Knee Lifter	
Looking the Seven	16

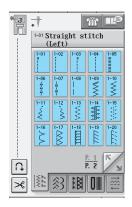
SEWING

A CAUTION

- To avoid injury, pay special attention to the needle while the machine is in operation. Keep your hands away from moving parts while the machine is in operation.
- Do not stretch or pull the fabric during sewing. Doing so may lead to injury.
- Do not use bent or broken needles. Doing so may lead to injury.
- Take care that the needle does not strike basting pins or other objects during sewing. Otherwise, the needle may break and cause injury.
- If stitches become bunched, lengthen the stitch length setting before continuing sewing. Otherwise, the needle may break and cause injury.

Sewing a Stitch

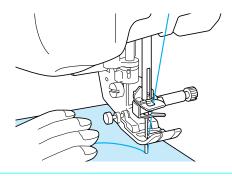
- Turn the main power to ON, and push the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.
- Press the key of the stitch you want to sew.



- → The symbol of the correct presser foot will be displayed in the upper left corner of the LCD.
- Install the presser foot (see "CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT" on page 32).

A CAUTION

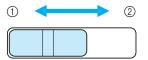
 Always use the correct presser foot. If the wrong presser foot is used, the needle may strike the presser foot and bend or break, possibly resulting in injury. Set the fabric under the presser foot. Hold the fabric and thread ends in your left hand, and turn the handwheel to set the needle in the sewing start position.



Memo Memo

The black button on the left side of presser foot "J" should be pressed only if the fabric does not feed or when sewing thick seams (see page 41). Normally, you can sew without pressing the black button.

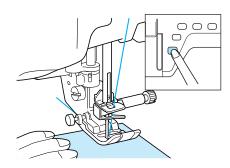
- **5** Lower the presser foot.
 - * You do not have to pull up the bobbin thread.
- Adjust the sewing speed with the speed control slide.
 - You can use this slide to adjust sewing speed during sewing.



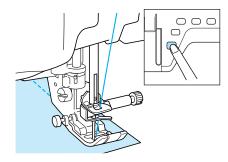
- 1) Slow
- ② Fast



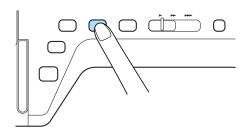
* Guide the fabric lightly by hand.



Press the "Start/Stop" button again to stop sewing.



Press the "Thread Cutter" button to trim the threads.



→ The needle will return to the up position automatically.

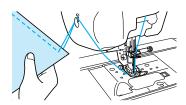
CAUTION

- Do not press the "Thread Cutter" button after the threads have been cut. Doing so could tangle the thread or break the needle and damage the machine.
- Do not press the "Thread Cutter" button when there is no fabric set in the machine or during machine operation. The thread may tangle, possibly resulting in damage.



Note

When cutting thread thicker than #30, nylon thread, or other decorative threads, use the thread cutter on the side of the machine.



When the needle has stopped moving, raise the presser foot and remove the fabric.



Memo

This machine is equipped with a bobbin thread sensor that warns you when the bobbin thread is almost empty. When the bobbin thread is nearly empty, the machine automatically stops. However, if the "Start/Stop" button is pressed, a few stitches can be sewn. If the warning displays, re-thread the machine immediately.

■ Using the Foot Controller

You can also use the foot controller to start and stop sewing.



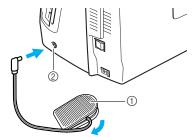
CAUTION

Do not allow fabric pieces and dust to collect in the foot controller. Doing so could cause a fire or an electric shock.



Memo

- When the foot controller is being used, the "Start/Stop" button has no effect on sewing.
- The foot controller cannot be used when embroidering.
- The foot controller can be used for sewing utility and decorative stitches when the embroidery unit is attached.
- Insert the foot controller plug into its jack on the machine.



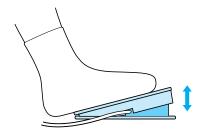
- 1 Foot controller
- (2) Foot controller jack



Do not pull the retractable cord out beyond the red mark on the cord.



Slowly depress the foot controller to start sewing.





Memo

The speed set using the sewing speed controller is the foot controller's maximum sewing speed.



Release the foot controller to stop the machine.



Memo

(For U.S.A. only)

Foot controller: Model S

This foot controller can be used with model

NV5000

Sewing Reinforcement Stitches

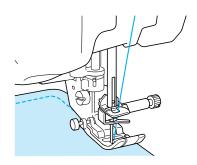
Reverse/reinforcement stitches are generally necessary at the beginning and end of sewing. You can use the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew reverse/reinforcement stitches manually (see page 3).

If the automatic reinforcement stitch is selected on the screen, reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) will be sewn automatically at the beginning of sewing when the "Start/Stop" button is pressed. Press the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) automatically at the end of sewing (see page 44).



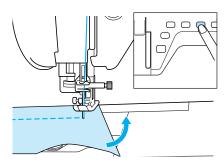
Sewing Curves

Sew slowly while keeping the seam parallel with the fabric edge as you guide the fabric around the curve.

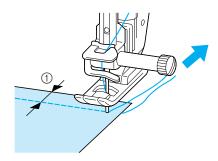


Changing Sewing Direction

Stop the machine. Leave the needle in the fabric, and press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to raise the presser foot. Using the needle as a pivot, turn the fabric so that you can sew in the new direction. Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to lower the presser foot and start sewing.



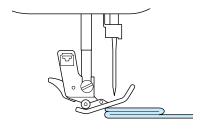
When edge stitching a short stitch length close to the edge of the fabric, the presser foot may not cover enough fabric for proper feeding. Before you begin to sew, sew a basting thread at the corner point. When you change direction at the corner, start sewing as you pull the basting thread toward the back.



① 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch)

Sewing Heavyweight Fabrics

The sewing machine can sew fabrics up to 6 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) thick. If the thickness of a seam causes sewing to occur at an angle, help guide the fabric by hand and sew on the downward slope.

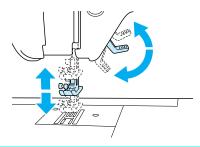


A CAUTION

 Do not forcefully push fabrics more than 6 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) thick through the sewing machine. This may cause the needle to break and cause injury.

■ If the Fabric does not Fit under the Presser Foot

If the presser foot is in the up position, and you are sewing heavyweight or multiple layers of fabric which do not fit easily under the presser foot, use the presser foot lever to raise the presser foot to its highest position. The fabric will now fit under the presser foot.





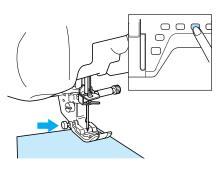
Memo

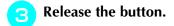
You cannot use the presser foot lever after the presser foot has been raised using the "Presser Foot Lifter" button.

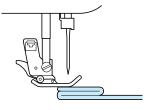
■ If the Fabric does not Feed at the Beginning of Stitching

If the fabric does not feed when starting to sew or when sewing thick seams, press the black button on the left side of presser foot "J".

- Raise the presser foot.
 - While keeping the black button on the left side of presser foot "J" pressed in, press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to lower the presser foot.







→ The presser foot remains level, enabling the fabric to be fed.

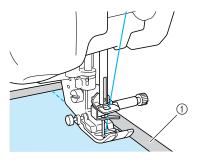


Memo

Once the trouble spot has been passed, the foot will return to its normal position.

Sewing Lightweight Fabrics

Place thin paper or tear away embroidery stabilizer under thin fabrics to make sewing easier. Gently tear off the paper or the stabilizer after sewing.



1 Thin paper

STITCH SETTINGS

When you select a stitch, your machine automatically selects the appropriate stitch width, stitch length, and upper thread tension. However, if needed, you can change any of the individual settings.

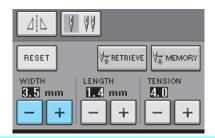


Note

- Settings for some stitches cannot be changed (refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual).
- If you turn off the machine or select another stitch without saving stitch setting changes (see "Saving Your Stitch Settings" on page 50), the stitch settings will return to their default settings.

Setting the Stitch Width

Follow the steps below when you want to change the zigzag stitch pattern width.



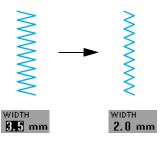


Memo

 For an alternate method of changing the stitch width using the speed controller, see page 70.

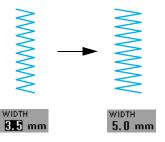
Example:

Press – to narrow the zigzag stitch pattern width.



 \rightarrow The value in the display gets smaller.

Press + to widen the zigzag stitch pattern width.



→ The value in the display gets bigger.

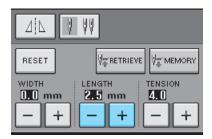


Memo

Press RESET to return the stitch width to the original setting.

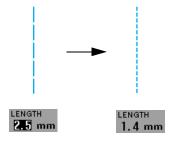
Setting the Stitch Length

Follow the steps below when you want to change the stitch pattern length.



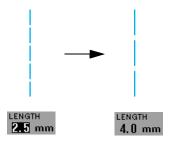
Example:

Press – to shorten the stitch length.



 \rightarrow The value in the display gets smaller.

Press + to lengthen the stitch length.



 \rightarrow The value in the display gets bigger.



- Using the Image Key, you can check changes made to the stitch.
- Press | RESET | to return the stitch length to the original setting.



CAUTION

If the stitches get bunched together, lengthen the stitch length and continue sewing. Do not continue sewing without lengthening the stitch length. Otherwise, the needle may break and cause injury.

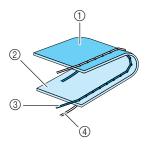
Setting the Thread Tension

You may need to change the thread tension, depending on the fabric and thread being used. Follow the steps below to make any necessary changes.



Proper Thread Tension

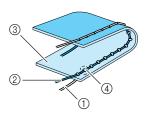
The upper and lower threads should cross near the center of the fabric. If the thread tension is not properly set, the seam may have a poor finish or the fabric may pucker.



- ① Wrong side
- ② Surface
- ③ Upper thread
- 4 Bobbin thread

■ Upper Thread is Too Tight

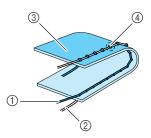
If the bobbin thread can be seen on the surface of the fabric, press



- 1) Bobbin thread
- ② Upper thread
- ③ Surface
- (4) Locks appear on surface of fabric

■ Upper Thread is Too Loose

If the upper thread can be seen on the wrong side of the fabric, press | +



- (1) Upper thread
- ② Bobbin thread
- ③ Wrong side
- 4 Locks appear on wrong side of fabric



Memo

 Press | RESET | to return the thread tension to the original setting.

USEFUL FUNCTIONS

Automatic Reinforcement Stitching

After selecting a stitch pattern, turn on the automatic reinforcement stitching function before sewing, and the machine will automatically sew reinforcement stitches (or reverse stitches, depending on the stitch pattern) at the beginning and end of sewing.

- Select a stitch pattern.
- \(\) to set the automatic reinforcement stitching function.



ightarrow The key will display as $|\bigcap$





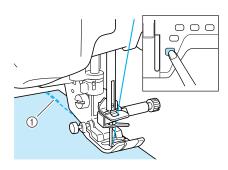
Memo

Some stitches, such as buttonholes and bar tacks, require reinforcement stitches at the beginning of sewing. If you select one of these stitches, the machine will automatically turn on

this function (the key appears as the stitch is selected).



Set the fabric in the start position and start sewing.



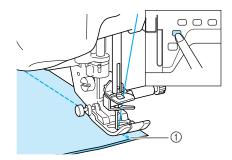
- Reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches)
- → The machine will automatically sew reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) and then continue sewing.



Memo

If you press the "Start/Stop" button to pause sewing, press it again to continue. The machine will not sew reverse reinforcement stitches again.

Press the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button.



- (1) Reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches)
- → The machine will sew reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) and stop.



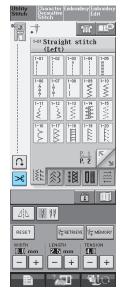
To turn off the automatic reinforcement stitching function, press again, so it appears



Automatic Thread Cutting

After selecting a stitch pattern, turn on the automatic thread cutting function before sewing, and the machine will automatically sew reinforcement stitches (or reverse stitches, depending on the stitch pattern) at the beginning and end of sewing, and trim the threads at the end of sewing. This function is useful when sewing buttonholes and bar tacks.

- Select a stitch pattern.
- **Press** | **⊀** | to set the automatic thread cutting function.



→ The key will display as

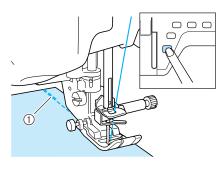




This function is set automatically when sewing embroidery.



Set the fabric in the start position and start sewing.

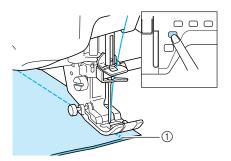


- ① Reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches)
- The machine will automatically sew reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) and then continue sewing.



If you press the "Start/Stop" button to pause sewing, press the same button again to continue. The beginning reverse/reinforcement stitches will not be sewn again.

Press the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitching" button.



- 1) Reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches)
- The machine will sew reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches), then trim the thread.



To turn off the automatic thread cutting func-

tion, press | > |



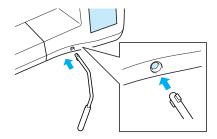
again, so it appears as | > {



■ Using the Knee Lifter

Using the knee lifter, you can raise and lower the presser foot with your knee, leaving both hands free to handle the fabric.

Align the tabs on the knee lifter with the notches in the jack, and then insert the knee lifter as far as possible.

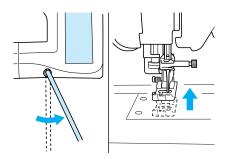




Note

If the knee lifter is not pushed into the mounting slot as far as possible, it may come out during use.

Use your knee to move the knee lifter to the right in order to raise the presser foot. Release the knee lifter to lower the presser foot.





CAUTION

Be sure to keep your knee away from the knee lifter during sewing. If the knee lifter is pushed during machine operation, the needle may break or the thread tension may loosen.

Locking the Screen

If the screen is locked before starting to sew, the various settings such as the stitch width and stitch length are locked and cannot be changed. This prevents screen settings from accidentally being changed or the machine from being stopped while large pieces of fabric or projects are being sewn. The screen can be locked when sewing utility stitches and character decorative stitches.

- Select a stitch pattern.
- If necessary, adjust any settings such as the stitch width and stitch length.
- Press to lock the screen settings.
 - → The key appears as
- Sew your project.
- When you are finished sewing, press again to unlock the screen settings.



- If the screen is locked (), unlock the screen by pressing 1 . While the screen is locked, no other key can be operated.
- The settings are unlocked when the machine is turned off and on.



${}_{\text{Chapter}} \, {\it 3} \\ {\it Utility Stitches}$

Selecting a Stitch	48
■ Stitch Selection Screens	
Using the Mirror Image Key Using the Image Key	
Saving Your Stitch Settings	
Saving Settings	50
■ Retrieving Saved Settings	51
Using the Sewing Type Selection Key	51
SEWING THE STITCHES	53
Straight Stitches	53
■ Changing the Needle Position (Left or Middle Needle Po Stitches Only)	
■ Using the Straight Stitch Needle Plate and the Straight	
Stitch Foot	
■ Basting	
Gathering	
Flat Fell Seam	
Pintuck	
Zigzag Stitches	
Overcasting (Using a Zigzag Stitch)	
Appliqué (Using a Zigzag Stitch)	
■ Patchwork (for Crazy Quilt)	61
■ Sewing Curves (Using a Zigzag Stitch)	
Cord Guide Bobbin Cover (Using a Zigzag Stitch)	
Elastic Zigzag Stitches	
■ Tape Attaching ■ Overcasting	
Overcasting	
Overcasting Using Presser Foot "G"	63
Overcasting Using Presser Foot "J" Overcasting Using the Side Cutter	64
Overcasting Using the Side Cutter When Sewing Straight Stitches While Using the Side Cut	65
Quilting	
■ Piecing	
■ Quilting	
■ Appliqué	
Quilting with Satin Stitches Free-motion Quilting	
Blind Hem Stitches	
■ If the Needle does not Catch the Fold	
■ If the Needle Catches Too Much of the Fold	
Appliqué	
Sewing Sharp Curves	
Shelltuck Stitches	
Scallop Stitches	
Top Stitching	
Smocking Stitches	
Fagoting	
Tape or Elastic Attaching	
Heirloom	
Hemstitching (1) (Daisy Stitch)	
■ Hemstitching (2) (Drawn Work) ■ Hemstitching (3)	
One-sten Ruttonholes	

■ Sewing Stretch Fabrics	83
■ Odd Shaped Buttons/Buttons that do not Fit into	
the Button Holder Plate	8
Four-step Buttonholes	84
■ Darning	80
Bar Tacks	88
■ Bar Tacks on Thick Fabrics	89
Button Sewing	90
■ Attaching 4 Hole Buttons	91
■ Attaching a Shank to the Button	9
Eyelet	
Multi-directional Sewing (Straight Stitch and	
Zigzag Stitch)	93
Zipper Insertion	94
■ Centered Zipper	94
■ Inserting a Side Zipper	

SELECTING UTILITY STITCHES

Selecting a Stitch

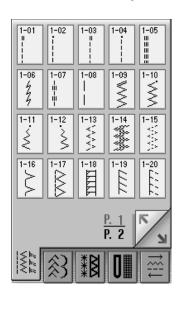
■ Stitch Selection Screens

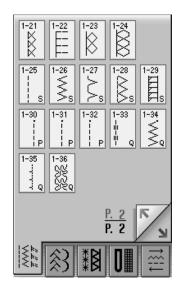
There are 5 categories of Utility Stitches. for that category.

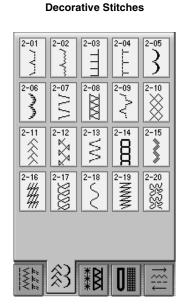


indicates that there is more than one stitch selection screen

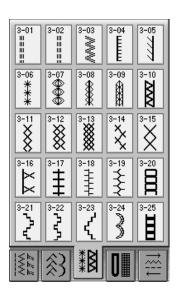
Straight/Overcasting/Quilting Stitches



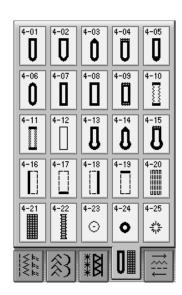




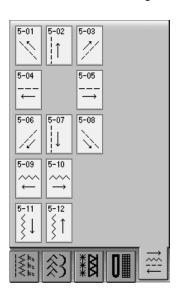
Heirloom Stitches

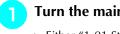


Buttonholes/Bar tacks



Multi-directional Sewing



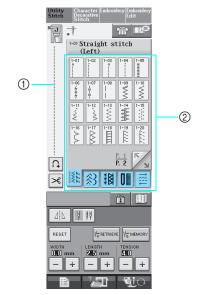


Turn the main power to ON.

- → Either "1-01 Straight stitch (Left)" or "1-03 Straight stitch (Middle)" is selected, depending on the setting selected in the setting screen.
- Use Kill of the line of the li

category you want.

- * Press Utility to view this screen if another screen displays.
- * Press to view the next page.



- ① Preview of the selected stitch
- ② Stitch selection screen
- **3** Press the key of the stitch you want to sew.



Memo

For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.

■ Using the Mirror Image Key

Depending on the type of utility stitch you select, you may be able to sew a horizontal mirror image of the stitch.

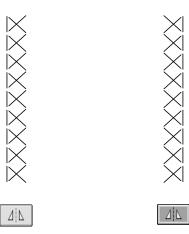
If \triangle is lit when you select a stitch, it will be possible to make a mirror image of the stitch.

∠ Note

If $\triangle \setminus \triangle$ is light gray after you select a stitch, you cannot create a horizontal mirror image of the selected stitch (this is true of buttonholes, multi-directional sewing, and others).

Press 4 to create a horizontal mirror image of the selected stitch.

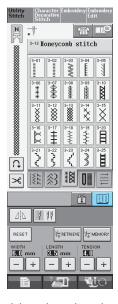
The key will display as $\square \square$.



■ Using the Image Key

You can display an actual size image of the selected stitch. You can also check and change the colors of the image on the screen.

Press .



→ An image of the selected stitch is displayed.



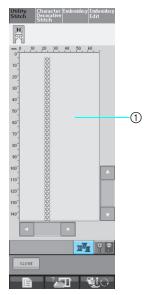
Press to change the thread color of the stitch on the screen.

Press Press to display an enlarged image of the stitch.



Memo

- The color changes every time you press
- The units of the stitch display area are in



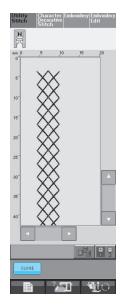
① Stitch screen



Press

to go back to the original

screen.



Saving Your Stitch Settings

The settings for the zigzag stitch width, stitch length, thread tension, automatic thread cutting, automatic reinforcement stitching, etc., are preset in the machine for each stitch. However, if you have specific settings that you wish to reuse later for a stitch, you can change the settings so that they can be saved for that stitch. Five sets of settings can be saved for a single stitch.

■ Saving Settings



Select a stitch. (Example: 💈)





Specify your preferred settings.





Press WIMEMORY



→ The settings are saved and the original screen automatically appears.



Memo

If you try to save settings when there are already 5 sets of settings saved for a stitch, a message will appear. Follow the directions in the message to erase one set of currently saved settings and save the new settings.

■ Retrieving Saved Settings



Select a stitch.



Memo

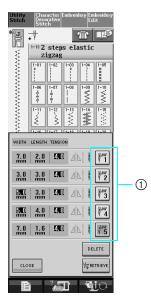
When a stitch is selected, the last settings retrieved are displayed. The last settings retrieved are retained even if the machine was turned off or a different stitch was selected.





Press the numbered key of the settings to be retrieved.

* Press close to return to the original screen without retrieving settings.



Numbered keys





Memo

You can delete the selected settings by pressing DELETE.

→ The selected settings are retrieved, and the original screen automatically appears.

Using the Sewing Type Selection Key

You can also select utility stitches using Use this key when you are not sure which stitch to use for your application, or to get advice about sewing particular stitches. For example, if you want to sew overcasting, but you do not know which stitch to use or how to sew the stitch, you can use this screen to get advice. We recommend that beginners use this method to select stitches.

Example: Displaying information about overcasting

Press .



→ The advice screen is displayed.

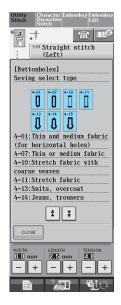


* Press CLOSE to return to the original screen.



→ The upper part of the screen displays a selection of overcasting stitches with explanations.

- Read the explanations and select the appropriate stitch.
 - * Press 🛕 or 😲 to scroll the page.



→ The screen displays directions for sewing the selected stitch.

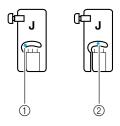
- Follow the directions to sew the stitch.
 - * Press to view the next page.



SEWING THE STITCHES

Straight Stitches

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch.)]		Stitch length [mm (inch.)]		Twin
				Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	needle
1-01	Straight stitch (Left)	*1	General sewing, gather, pintuck, etc. Reverse stitch is sewn while pressing "Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch" button.	0.0 (0)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK
1-02	Straight stitch (Left)	*1	General sewing, gather, pintuck, etc. Reinforcement stitch is sewn while pressing "Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch" button.	0.0 (0)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK
1-03	Straight stitch (Middle)	* J	General sewing, gather, pintuck, etc. Reverse stitch is sewn while pressing "Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch" button.	3.5 (1/8)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK
1-04	Straight stitch (Middle)	* J	General sewing, gather, pintuck, etc. Reinforcement stitch is sewn while pressing "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button.	3.5 (1/8)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK
1-05 	Triple stretch stitch	* J	General sewing for reinforcement and decorative topstitching	0.0 (0)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-06 4 7	Stem stitch	* J	Reinforced stitching, sewing and decorative applications	1.0 (1/16)	1.0 - 3.0 (1/16 - 1/8)	2.5 (3/32)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-07	Decorative stitch	r F	Decorative stitching, top stitching	0.0 (0)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-08 	Basting stitch	* J	Basting	0.0 (0)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	20.0 (3/4)	5.0 - 30.0 (3/16 - 1-3/16)	NO



- ① Left needle position
- ② Middle needle position



- ① Reverse stitch
- ② Reinforcement stitch



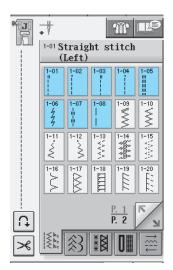
Memo

If the selected stitch has a double mark " $\$ " at the top of the key display, you can sew reverse stitches holding the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button.

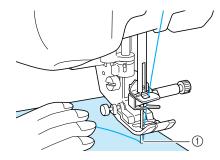
If the selected stitch has a dot mark " \cdot " at the top of the key display, you can sew reinforcement stitches holding the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button (see page 40).



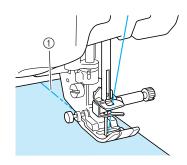
Select a stitch.



- Attach presser foot "J".
- Hold the thread tails and fabric with your left hand, and turn the handwheel with your right hand to insert the needle into the fabric.



- Sewing start position
- Lower the presser foot, and hold the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew 3-4 stitches.
 - → The machine sews reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches).
- Press the "Start/Stop" button to sew forward.

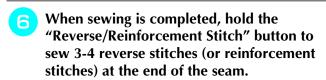


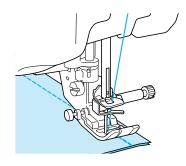
- Reverse stitches
- → The machine will begin sewing slowly.



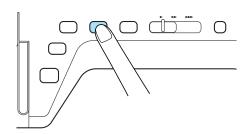
CAUTION

Be sure the needle does not strike a basting pin, or any other objects, during sewing. The thread could tangle or the needle could break, causing injury.





After sewing, press the "Thread Cutter" button to trim the threads.

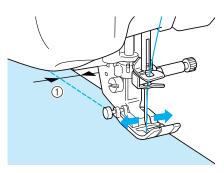




When the automatic thread cutting and automatic reinforcement stitch keys on the screen are selected, reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) will be sewn automatically at the beginning of sewing when the "Start/Stop" button is pressed. Press the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) and trim the thread automatically at the end of sewing.

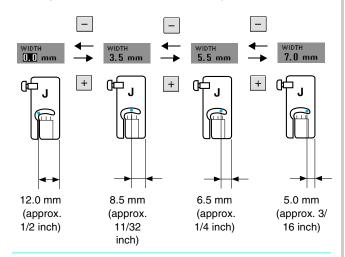
■ Changing the Needle Position (Left or Middle Needle Position Stitches Only)

When you select left or middle needle position stitches, you can use | - | and | + | in the stitch width display to change the position of the needle. Match the distance from the right edge of the presser foot to the needle with the stitch width, then align the edge of the presser foot with the edge of the fabric during sewing for an attractive finish.



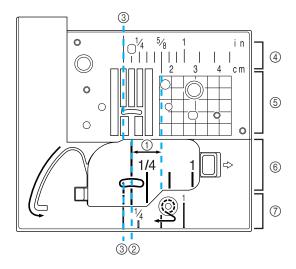
1 Stitch width

Example: Left/Middle needle position stitches



Memo

For a standard 16 mm (approx. 5/8 inch) seam allowance, set the width to 0.0 mm on the screen. While sewing, align the edge of the fabric with the 16 mm (approx. 5/8 inch) mark on the needle plate.



- ① 16 mm (approx. 5/8 inch)
- ② For stitches with a middle (center) needle position
- ③ For stitches with a left needle position
- (4) Left needle position on the needle plate <inch>
- (5) Left needle position on the needle plate <cm>
- ⑥ Middle (center) needle position on the bobbin cover <inch>
- ② Left needle position on the needle plate cover <inch>

■ Using the Straight Stitch Needle Plate and the Straight Stitch Foot

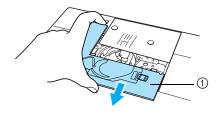
The straight stitch needle plate and the straight stitch foot can only be used for straight stitches (middle needle position stitches). Use the straight stitch needle plate and the straight stitch foot when sewing thin fabrics or when sewing small pieces which tend to sink into the hole of the regular needle plate during sewing. The straight stitch foot is perfect to reduce puckering on lightweight fabrics. The small opening on the foot provides support for the fabric as the needle travels through the fabric.

A

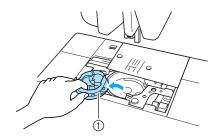
CAUTION

Always use the straight stitch foot in combination with the straight stitch needle plate.

- Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to raise the presser foot and turn the main power to OFF.
- Remove the flat bed attachment or the embroidery unit if either are attached.
- Grasp both sides of the needle plate cover, and then slide it toward you.



- Needle plate cover
- Grasp the bobbin case, and then pull it out.



- Bobbin case
- Use the screwdriver included with the machine to unscrew and remove the regular needle plate.



6 Set the straight stitch needle plate in place and use the screwdriver to tighten the plate.



Insert the bobbin case in its original position, and then attach the needle plate cover.



Note

Align the two screw holes on the needle plate with the two holes on the machine and screws in the needle plate.

After reinstalling the needle plate cover, select any of the straight stitches.



Memo

When using the straight stitch needle plate, all straight stitches become middle needle position stitches. You cannot change the needle position using the width display.

A CAUTION

- Selecting other stitches will cause an error message to be displayed.
- Be sure to turn the handwheel slowly in your direction before sewing and make sure that the needle is not contacting the straight stitch foot and straight stitch needle plate.
- Attach the straight stitch foot.
- 10 Start sewing.
 - After sewing, make sure to remove the straight stitch needle plate and the straight stitch foot, and reinstall the regular needle plate, the needle plate cover and the presser foot "J".

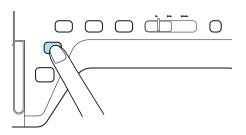


Memo

To prevent puckering on fine fabrics, use a fine needle, size 75/11, and a short stitch length. For heavier fabrics, use a heavier needle, size 90/14, and longer stitches.

■ Basting

- Select $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ and attach presser foot "J".
- Press the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew reinforcement stitches, then continue sewing.

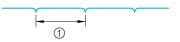




Memo

If you do not want to use a reinforcement stitch at the beginning; you should lift the presser foot, rotate the handwheel, pull up the bobbin thread and pull a length of top and bobbin thread out from the rear of the machine.

You can set the stitch length between 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and 30 mm (approx. 1-3/16 inches)



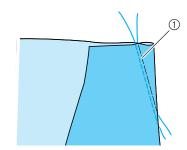
- ① Between 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and 30 mm (approx. 1-3/16 inches)
- Sew while keeping the fabric straight.



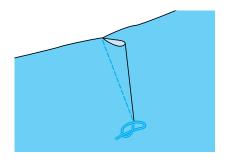
4 End the basting with reinforcement stitches.

Dart Seam

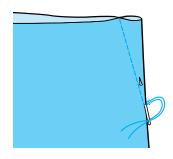
- and attach presser foot "J". Select
- Sew a reverse stitch at the beginning of the dart and then sew from the wide end to the other end without stretching the fabric.
 - If automatic reinforcement stitching is preset, a reinforcement stitch will automatically be sewn at the beginning of sewing.



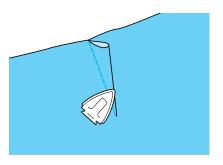
- (1) Basting
- Cut the thread at the end leaving 50 mm (approx. 1-15/16 inches), and then tie both ends together.
 - Do not sew a reverse stitch at the end.



Insert the ends of the thread into the dart with a needle.

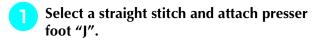


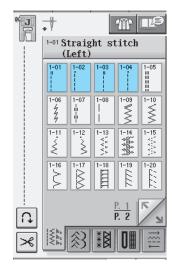
Iron the dart to one side so that it is flat.



Gathering

Use on waists of skirts, sleeves of shirts, etc.





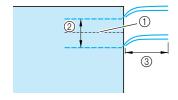
- Set the stitch length to 4.0 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and the thread tension to approximately 2.0 (weaker tension).
 - GATHERING If you press after pressing , the stitch length will be set automatically to 4.0 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and the thread tension will be automatically set to 2.0.
- Pull the bobbin and upper threads out by 50 mm (approx. 1-15/16 inches) (see page 23).



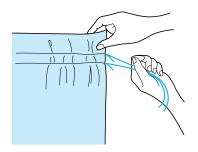
- 1 Upper thread
- ② Bobbin thread
- 3 About 50 mm (approx. 1-15/16 inches)



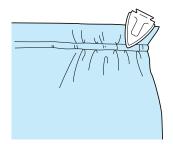
Sew two rows of straight stitches parallel to the seam line, then trim excess thread leaving 50 mm (approx. 1-15/16 inches).



- ① Seam line
- ② 10 to 15 mm (approx. 3/8 inch to 9/16 inch)
- 3 About 50 mm (approx. 1-15/16 inches)
- Pull the bobbin threads to obtain the desired amount of gather, then tie the threads.



6 Smooth the gathers by ironing them.



Sew on the seam line and remove the basting stitch.

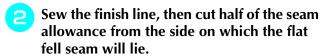
Flat Fell Seam

Use for reinforcing seams and finishing edges neatly.

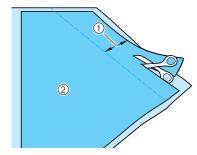


Select

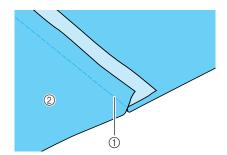
and attach presser foot "J".



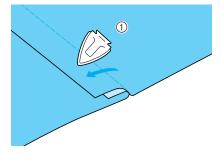
* When the automatic thread cutting and automatic reinforcement stitching are preset, reinforcement stitches will be sewn automatically at the beginning of sewing. Press the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew a reinforcement stitch and trim the thread automatically at the end of sewing.



- ① About 12 mm (approx. 1/2 inch)
- ② Wrong side
- **3** Spread the fabric out along the finish line.

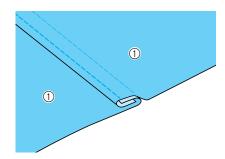


- ① Finish line
- ② Wrong side
- Lay both seam allowances on the side of the shorter seam (cut seam) and iron them.



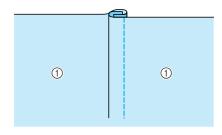
① Wrong side

Fold the longer seam allowance around the shorter one, and sew the edge of the fold.



① Wrong side

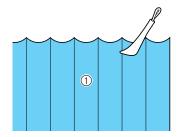
Finished flat fell seam



① Surface

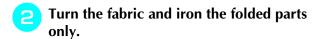
Pintuck

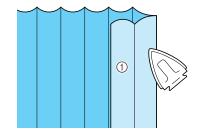
Mark along the folds on the wrong side of the fabric.



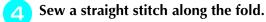
① Wrong side

① Surface

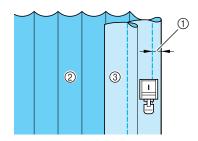




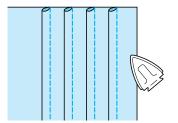
and attach presser foot "I". Select |



When the automatic thread cutting and automatic reinforcement stitching are preset, reinforcement stitches will be sewn automatically at the beginning of sewing. Press the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew a reinforcement stitch and trim the thread automatically at the end of sewing.



- ① Width for pintuck
- ② Wrong side
- ③ Surface
- Iron the folds in the same direction.



Zigzag Stitches

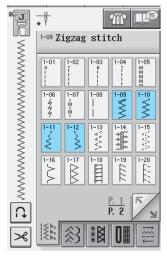
Zigzag stitches are useful for overcasting, appliqué, patchwork, and many other applications. Select a stitch, and attach presser foot "J".

If the stitch which you select has a double mark "" at the top of the key display, you can sew reverse stitches by holding the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button.

If the stitch which you select has a dot mark " \cdot " at the top of the key display, you can sew reinforcement stitches by holding the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button (see page 40).

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch.)]		Stitch length [mm (inch.)]		Twin needle
	1001		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	necule	
1-09	Zigzag stitch	*J	For overcasting, mending. Reverse stitch is sewn while pressing "Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch" button.	3.5 (1/8)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.4 (1/16)	0.0 - 4.0 (0 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-10	Zigzag stitch	*J	For overcasting, mending. Reinforcement stitch is sewn while pressing "Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch" button.	3.5 (1/8)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.4 (1/16)	0.0 - 4.0 (0 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-11	Zigzag stitch (right)	*1	Start from right needle position, zigzag sew at left.	3.5 (1/8)	2.5 - 5.0 (3/32 - 3/16)	1.4 (1/16)	0.3 - 4.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-12	Zigzag stitch (left)	* J	Start from left needle position, zigzag sew at right.	3.5 (1/8)	2.5 - 5.0 (3/32 - 3/16)	1.4 (1/16)	0.3 - 4.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)

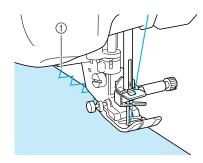




Attach presser foot "J".

■ Overcasting (Using a Zigzag Stitch)

Sew the overcasting along the edge of the fabric while positioning the right-hand side needle drop point just outside the edge of the fabric.

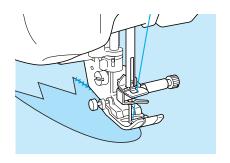


① Needle drop position

■ Appliqué (Using a Zigzag Stitch)

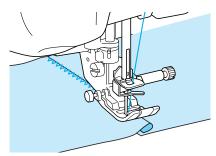
Attach the appliqué using a temporary spray adhesive or basting, then sew it.

* Sew a zigzag stitch while positioning the right-hand side needle drop point just outside the edge of the fabric.



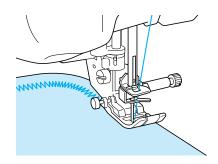
■ Patchwork (for Crazy Quilt)

Turn back the desired width of fabric and position it over the lower fabric, then sew so that the stitch bridges both pieces of fabric.



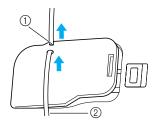
■ Sewing Curves (Using a Zigzag Stitch)

Shorten the stitch length setting to obtain a fine stitch. Sew slowly, keeping the seams parallel with the fabric edge as you guide the fabric around the curve.

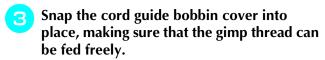


■ Cord Guide Bobbin Cover (Using a Zigzag Stitch)

- Remove the bobbin cover from the machine (see page 22).
- Thread the gimp thread through the hole in the cord guide bobbin cover from top to bottom. Position the thread in the notch at the back of the cord guide bobbin cover.



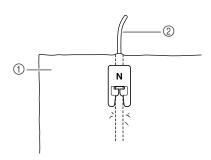
- 1) Notch
- ② Gimp thread



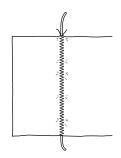
Make sure there are no restrictions when feeding the thread.



- Set the zigzag width from 2.0-2.5 mm (approx. 1/16 - 3/32 inch).
- Attach presser foot "N".
- Position the fabric right side up on top of the cord and place the cord to the rear of the machine under the presser foot.



- 1 Fabric (right side)
- ② Gimp thread
- Lower the presser foot and start sewing to make a decorative finish.

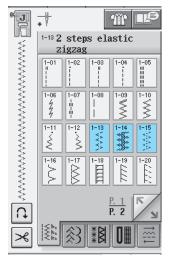


Elastic Zigzag Stitches

Use elastic zigzag stitches for tape attaching, overcasting, darning, or a wide variety of other uses.

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch.)]		Stitch length [mm (inch.)]		Twin needle
		1001		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	liceule
1-13 <	2 step elastic zigzag	* J	Overcasting (medium weight and stretch fabrics), tape and elastic	5.0 (3/16)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	1.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	OK (J)
1-14	2 step elastic zigzag	* J	Overcasting (medium weight and stretch fabrics), tape and elastic	5.0 (3/16)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	1.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	OK (J)
1-15 	3 step elastic zigzag	*1	Overcasting (medium, heavyweight and stretch fabrics), tape and elastic	5.0 (3/16)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	1.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	OK (J)

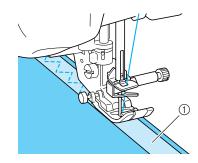




2 Attach presser foot "J".

■ Tape Attaching

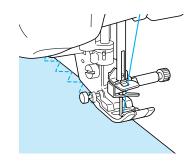
Stretch the tape flat. While stretching the tape flat, sew the tape to the fabric.



① Tape

■ Overcasting

Use this stitch to sew overcasting on the edge of stretch fabrics. Sew the overcasting along the edge of the fabric while positioning the right-hand side needle drop point just outside the edge of the fabric.

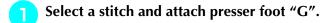


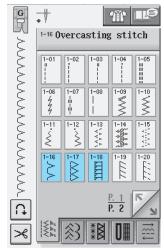
Overcasting

Use for the beginning and end of seams in skirts or trousers, and the beginning and end of all cuttings. Use presser foot "G", presser foot "J", or the side cutter attachment depending on the kind of overcasting stitch you select.

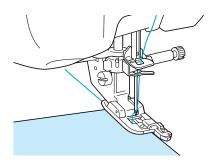
■ Overcasting Using Presser Foot "G"

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch.)]		Stitch length [mm (inch.)]		Twin needle
		1001		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	liceule
1-16	Overcasting stitch	G	Reinforcing of light and medium weight fabrics	3.5 (1/8)	2.5 - 5.0 (3/32 - 3/16)	2.0 (1/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
1-17	Overcasting stitch	G	Reinforcing of heavyweight fabric	5.0 (3/16)	2.5 - 5.0 (3/32 - 3/16)	2.5 (3/32)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
1-18	Overcasting stitch	G	Reinforcing of medium, heavyweight and easily frayable fabrics or decorative stitching.	5.0 (3/16)	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	2.5 (3/32)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO

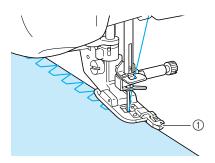




Lower the presser foot so that the presser foot guide is set flush against the edge of the fabric.



Sew along the presser foot guide.



① Guide

CAUTION

After the stitch width is adjusted, turn the handwheel toward you by hand and check that the needle does not touch the presser foot. If the needle hits the presser foot, the needle may break and cause injury.

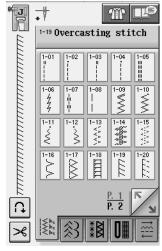


- ① The needle should not touch
- If the presser foot is raised to its highest level, the needle may strike the presser foot.

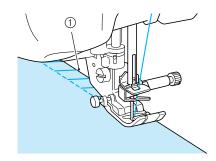
■ Overcasting Using Presser Foot "J"

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications	-	titch width nm (inch.)]		itch length nm (inch.)]	Twin needle
		1001		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	needie
1-19	Overcasting stitch	* J	Reinforced seaming of stretch fabric	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 9/32)	2.5 (3/32)	0.5 - 4.0 (1/32 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-20 	Overcasting stitch	J	Reinforcing of medium stretch fabric and heavyweight fabric, decorative stitching	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 9/32)	2.5 (3/32)	0.5 - 4.0 (1/32 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-21 X X X	Overcasting stitch	J	Reinforcement of stretch fabric or decorative stitching	4.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	4.0 (3/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-22 	Overcasting stitch	*1	Stretch knit seam	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	4.0 (3/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
1-23	Single diamond overcast	*1	Reinforcement and seaming stretch fabric	6.0 (15/ 64)	1.0 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	3.0 (1/8)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-24	Single diamond overcast	*1	Reinforcement of stretch fabric	6.0 (15/ 64)	1.0 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	1.8 (1/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)

Select a stitch and attach presser foot "J".



Sew with the needle dropping slightly off the edge of the fabric.



① Needle drop position

■ Overcasting Using the Side Cutter

By using the side cutter, you can do overcasting while cutting the fabric.

A CAUTION

• Make sure to only select one of the stitches listed below. Using another stitch may cause the needle to hit the presser foot and break, possibly causing injury.

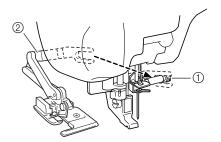


Memo

Thread the needle manually when using the side cutter, or only attach the side cutter after threading the needle using the "Automatic Threading" button.

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications		titch width mm (inch.)]		itch length nm (inch.)]	Twin needle
		1001		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	liceule
1-25	With side cutter	S	Straight stitch while cutting fabrics	0.0 (0)	0.0 - 2.5 (0 - 3/32)	2.5 (3/32)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
1-26 \$ \$s	With side cutter	S	Zigzag stitch while cutting fabrics	3.5 (1/8)	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	1.4 (1/16)	0.0 - 4.0 (0 - 3/16)	NO
1-27 >s	With side cutter	ĵ,	Overcasting stitch while cutting fabrics	3.5 (1/8)	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	2.0 (1/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
1-28 S	With side cutter	j s	Overcasting stitch while cutting fabrics	5.0 (3/16)	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	2.5 (3/32)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
1-29	With side cutter	j s	Overcasting stitch while cutting fabrics	5.0 (3/16)	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	2.5 (3/32)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO

- Follow the steps on page 32 to remove the presser foot.
- Position the fork on the side cutter's operating lever onto the needle clamp screw.

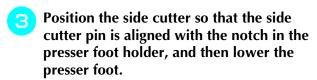


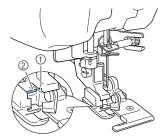
- 1) Needle clamp screw
- ② Operating lever



Memo

Make sure that the fork of the operating lever is set onto the needle screw firmly.

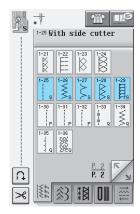




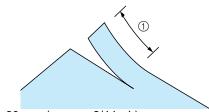
- 1) Notch in presser foot holder
- ② Pin
- \rightarrow The side cutter is attached.



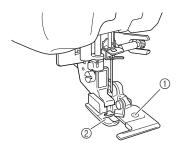
Select a stitch.



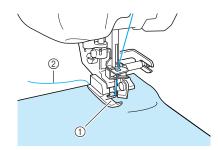
Make a cut of approximately 20 mm (approx. 3/4 inch) in the fabric.



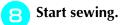
- ① 20 mm (approx. 3/4 inch)
- Position the fabric so that the right side of the cut is on top of the guide plate and the left side of the cut is underneath the presser foot.

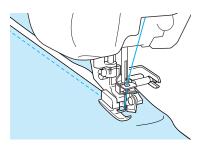


- Guide plate (lower knife)
- ② Presser foot
- 7 Thread the needle manually and pull out a long section of the upper thread. Pass it below the presser foot and pull it out in the fabric feed direction.



- 1) Presser foot
- ② Upper thread





→ A seam allowance is cut while the stitching is sewn.

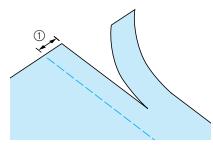


Note

If the width has been adjusted, turn the handwheel by hand to check that the needle does not touch the side cutter. If the needle touches the side cutter, it might cause the needle to break.

■ When Sewing Straight Stitches While Using the Side Cutter

The seam margin should be approximately 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch).

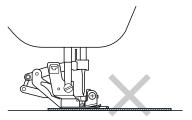


1 Seam margin



Memo

 The fabric will not be cut if the whole fabric is simply spread out underneath the presser foot guide plate. Set the fabric as explained in step from the previous section, and then start sewing.



- One layer of 13 oz. denim can be cut.
- Clean the side cutter after use to avoid having dust and scraps of thread build up on it.
- Add a small amount of oil as required to the cutting edge of the cutter.

Quilting

You can make beautiful quilts quickly and easily with this machine. When making a quilt, you will find it convenient to use the knee lifter and foot controller to free your hands for other tasks (see "Using the Foot Controller" on page 39 and /or see "Using the Knee Lifter" on page 46).

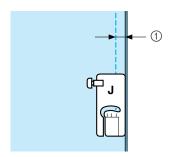
If there is a "P" or "Q" at the bottom of the key display, the indicated stitch is intended for quilting.

Pattern	Name of pattern	Type of presser	Use		itch width nm (inch.)]		itch length nm (inch.)]	Twin needle
		foot		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	possibility
1-30 i	Piecing stitch (Right)		Piecework/patchwork 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) right seam allowance	5.5 (7/32)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
1-31 i	Piecing stitch (Middle)		Piecework/patchwork	_	_	2.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
1-32 i	Piecing stitch (Left)		Piecework/patchwork 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) left seam allowance	1.5 (1/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
1-33 	Hand-look quilting		Quilting stitch made to look like hand quilting stitch	0.0 (0)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
1-34 \$ \$\sqrt{2}	Quilting appliqué zigzag stitch		Zigzag stitch for quilting and sewing on appliqué quilt pieces	3.5 (1/8)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.4 (1/16)	0.0 - 4.0 (0 - 3/16)	NO
1-35	Quilting appliqué stitch		Quilting stitch for invisible appliqué or attaching binding	1.5 (1/16)	0.5 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	1.8 (1/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
1-36 S& S& S&Q	Quilting stippling	* J	Background quilting	7.0 (1/4)	1.0 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	1.6 (1/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO

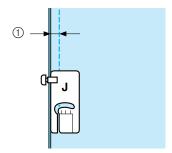
■ Piecing

Sewing two pieces of fabric together is called piecing. When cutting pieces for quilt blocks, make sure the seam allowance is 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch).

- Select or and attach presser foot
- Align the edge of the fabric with the edge of the presser foot, and start sewing.
 - * To sew a 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) seam allowance along the left edge of the presser foot with selected, the width should be set to 5.5 mm (approx. 7/32 inch).



- ① 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)
- * To sew a 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) seam allowance along the left edge of the presser foot with selected, the width should be set to 1.5 mm (approx. 1/32 inch).



- ① 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)
- * To change the needle position, use + or ir the width display.





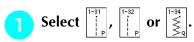
Memo

Using a straight stitch (middle needle position) makes it easier to sew smoothly (see page 53).

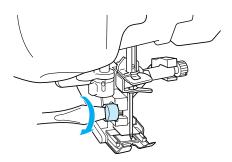
■ Quilting

Sewing together the quilt top, batting, and backing is called quilting. You can sew the quilt with the walking foot to keep the quilt top, batting, and backing from sliding. The walking foot has a set of feed dogs that move together with the feed dogs in the needle plate during sewing.

For straight line quilting, use the walking foot and the straight stitch needle plate. Always select a straight stitch (middle needle position) when using the straight stitch needle plate.





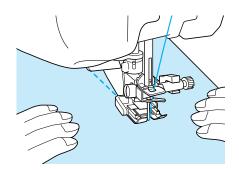


Place one hand on each side of the presser foot to hold the fabric secure while sewing.

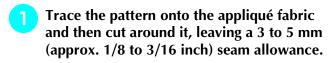


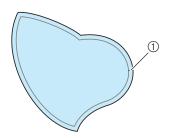
Memo

- · Sew at slow to medium speed.
- Do not sew in reverse or use stitches that require side ways or reverse feeding.
 Always check to be sure that your quilting surface is securely basted before beginning to sew. Specialized machine quilt needles and threads are also available for machine quilting.



■ Appliqué

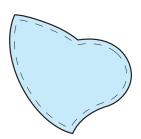




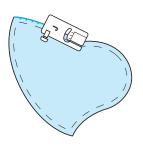
- 1) Seam allowance: 3 to 5 mm (approx. 1/8 to 3/16 inch)
- Place a piece of thick paper cut to the finished size of the appliqué design onto the fabric, and then fold over the seam margin using an iron. Clip curves when necessary.



Turn the appliqué over, and attach the thick paper with basting pins or a basting stitch.



- Select and attach presser foot "J".
- Use the quilting appliqué stitch to attach the appliqué. Sew around the edge while dropping the needle as close to the edge as possible.





(1) Needle drop position

CAUTION

Be careful that the needle does not strike a basting pin during sewing. Striking a pin can cause the needle to break, resulting in injury.

You can use the appliqué technique to attach appliqué designs like the three pictured below.







- 1 Dresden plate
- ② Stained glass
- ③ Sunbonnet sue

■ Quilting with Satin Stitches

Use the foot controller to sew with satin stitches. If you set the speed control slide to control the stitch width, you can make subtle changes in the stitch width during sewing.

- Attach the foot controller (see page 39).
- Select $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{1-34}{5} \\ \frac{5}{5} \end{bmatrix}$ and attach presser foot "J".
- Press in the length display to shorten the stitch length.

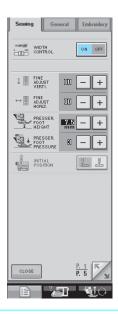




Memo

The setting will vary according to the kind of fabric and the thickness of the thread, but a length of 0.3 to 0.5 mm (approx. 1/64 to 1/32 inch) is best for satin stitches.

- Press to use the speed control slide to control the stitch width.
- 5 Set the width control to "ON".





Memo

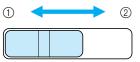
You can use the speed control slide to adjust the stitch width. Use the foot controller to adjust the sewing speed.



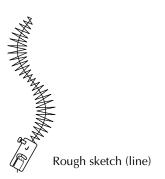
→ The display will return to the original screen.

Start sewing

* You can adjust the stitch width during sewing by moving the sewing speed controller. Slide the lever to the left, and the stitch width becomes narrower. Slide it to the right, the stitch width becomes wider. The size of the width changes equally on both sides of the middle needle position.



- 1 narrower
- ② wider



Otility Stitches

■ Free-motion Quilting

With free-motion quilting, the feed dogs can be lowered (using the feed dog position switch) so that the fabric can be moved freely in any direction. The quilting foot is needed for free-motion quilting. We recommend attaching the foot controller and sewing at a consistent speed.



Memo

In order to sew a balanced stitch, it may be necessary to lower the upper thread tension.

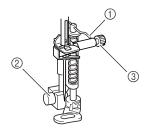


- Select
- Remove the presser foot holder (see page
- Align the quilting foot with the lower-left side of the presser bar.



The pin on the quilting foot should be positioned over the needle clamp screw.

Hold the quilting foot in place with your right hand, and then tighten the presser foot holder screw using the screwdriver in your left hand.



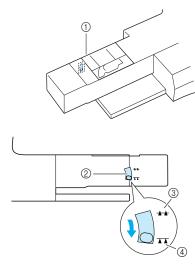
- (1) Pin on quilting foot
- ② Presser foot holder screw
- ③ Needle clamp screw



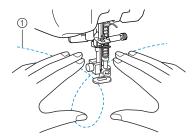
CAUTION

Be sure to securely tighten the screws with the screwdriver. Otherwise, the needle may touch the presser foot, causing it to bend or break.

Lower the feed dog position switch, located at the rear of the base of the machine, to $\overline{\mathbf{A}}$.



- 1 Rear of machine
- Feed dog position switch (as seen from the rear of the machine)
- 4 Down
- Use both hands to stretch the fabric taut, and then move the fabric at a regular pace in order to sew uniform stitches roughly 2.0-2.5 mm (approx. 1/16 - 3/32 inch) in length.



- 1) Stitch
- Reinforcement stitches are sewn at the beginning and end of sewing.
- After sewing is finished, raise the feed dog position switch to **\(\ldots \)** to raise the feed dogs.



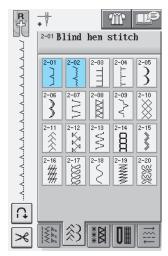
Normally, the feed dog position switch is in the up position.

Blind Hem Stitches

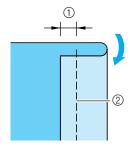
Select from these stitches to sew the hems or cuffs of dresses, blouses, pants, or skirts.

Stitch	Stitch name Presser foot Applications		Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch.)]		Stitch length [mm (inch.)]		Twin needle
		1001		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	necule
2-01	Blind hem stitch	R	Hemming woven fabrics	0.0 (0)	+3.03.0 (+1/81/8)	2.0 (1/16)	1.0 - 3.5 (1/16 - 1/8)	NO
2-02	Blind hem stitch stretch	R	Hemming stretch fabric	0.0 (0)	+3.03.0 (+1/81/8)	2.0 (1/16)	1.0 - 3.5 (1/16 - 1/8)	NO

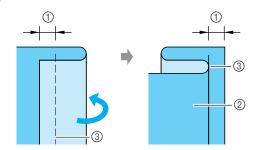




Place the fabric wrong side up, and fold and baste the fabric.

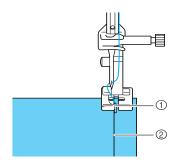


- ① 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch)
- ② Basting stitches
- Fold the fabric again.

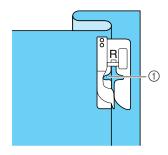


- ① 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch)
- ② Wrong side of fabric
- ③ Basting stitches

Attach blind hem stitch foot "R", and lower the presser foot. Position the fabric so the folded edge touches the guide of the presser foot.



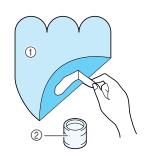
- ① Guide
- ② Fold
- Sew the fabric, keeping the folded edge in contact with the presser foot.



1 Needle position

Appliqué

- Use a temporary spray adhesive, fabric glue or a basting stitch to attach the appliqué to the fabric.
 - This will keep the fabric from moving during sewing.





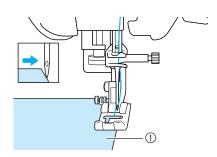
- ② Fabric glue
- Select

Adjust the stitch length and width to correspond to the appliqué shape, size, and quality of material (see page 42).

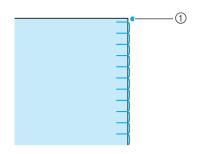


For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.

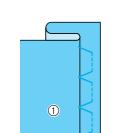
Attach presser foot "J". Check that the needle drops slightly off the edge of the appliqué, then start sewing.



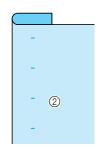
Appliqué material



① Needle drop position



fabric over.



- ① Wrong side of fabric
- ② Right side of fabric



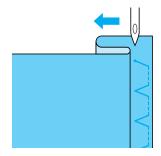
Blind hem stitches cannot be sewn if the left needle drop point does not catch the fold. If the needle catches too much of the fold, the fabric cannot be unfolded and the seam appearing on the right side of the fabric will be very large, leaving an unattractive finish. If you experience either of these cases, follow the instructions below to solve the problem.

Remove the basting stitches and turn the

■ If the Needle does not Catch the Fold

Adjust the width so that the needle slightly catches the fold by pressing | - | in the width display.

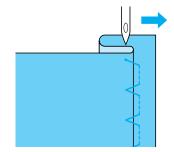




■ If the Needle Catches Too Much of the Fold

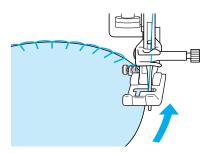
Adjust the width so that the needle slightly catches the fold by pressing | + | in the width display.





■ Sewing Sharp Curves

Stop the machine with the needle in the fabric outside the appliqué. Raise the presser foot and turn the fabric a little bit at a time while sewing for an attractive finish to the seam.





Memo

Placing a lightweight tear away stabilizer beneath the stitching area will improve the stitch placement along the edge of the appliqué fabric.

Shelltuck Stitches

Shelltuck stitches give an attractive appearance to shells along the curve of a collar. This stitch pattern can be used for edging the neckline or sleeves of dresses and blouses.



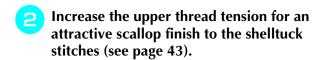
Select





Memo

For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.

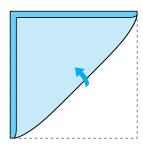




Memo

If the upper thread tension is too weak, the shelltuck stitches will not scallop.

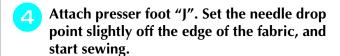
To make rows of shell tuck stitches, fold the fabric in half along the bias.

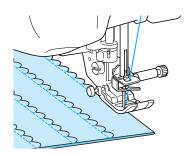


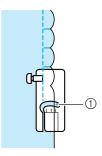


Memo

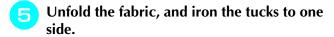
Use a thin fabric.

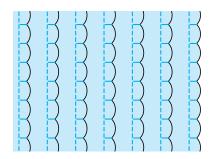






1 Needle drop position







Memo

To make shell tucks at the edge of a collar or neckline, follow the pattern's instructions and then use this stitch to make a decorative finish on the collar or neckline.

Scallop Stitches

This wave-shaped running stitch is called the scallop stitch. Use this stitch to decorate the edges of blouse collars and handkerchiefs or use it as a hem accent.



Memo

A temporary spray adhesive may be necessary for lightweight fabrics. Test sew the fabric before sewing a project.



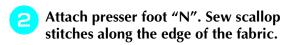
Select



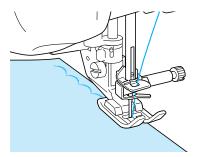


Memo

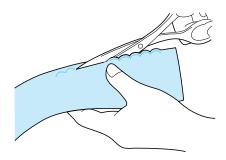
For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.



* Do not sew directly on the edge of the fabric.



Trim along the seam, making sure not to cut the stitches.





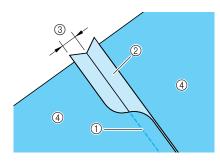
Memo

Use a seam sealant to secure the edges of the scallop stitches.

Top Stitching

For a decorative look called "Crazy Quilting", the following stitches can be sewn on top of a pressed seam allowance.

- Select a straight stitch and attach presser foot "J".
- With the right sides facing each other, sew two pieces of fabric together, and then press open the seam allowance.



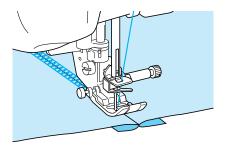
- ① Straight stitch
- ② Seam margins
- ③ 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)
- (4) Wrong side
- Select a stitch for top stitching.







Place the fabric right side up in the machine, and center the presser foot over the seam when sewing.

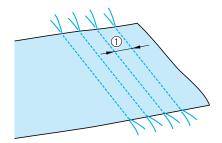


1) Right side of fabric

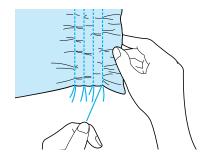
Smocking Stitches

Use smocking stitches for decorative sewing on clothes, etc.

- Select a straight stitch and attach presser foot "J".
- Set the stitch length to 4.0 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and loosen the upper thread tension to approximately 2.0 (See pages 42 through 43).
- Pull the bobbin and upper threads out by 50 mm (approx. 1-15/16 inches).
- Sew the seams, leaving approximately 10 mm (approx. 3/8 inch) between the seams, then trim excess thread, leaving 50 mm (approx. 1-15/16 inches).



- ① Approximately 10 mm (approx. 3/8 inch)
- Pull the bobbin threads to obtain the desired amount of gather, and then smooth the gathers by ironing them.



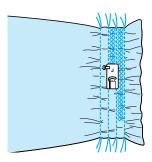
6 Select 2-10 or 5-12 with



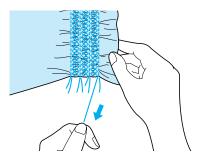
Memo

For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.





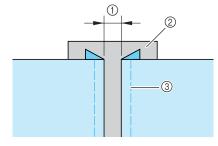
Pull out the straight stitch threads.



Fagoting

When there is a space between two fabrics with thread sewn over the space to join the fabrics together, it is called fagoting. Use this stitch when sewing blouses or children's clothes.

Baste two pieces of fabric onto thin paper, leaving a space of 4 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) between the fabrics.



- ① 4 mm (approx. 3/16 inch)
- 2 Paper
- ③ Basting stitches

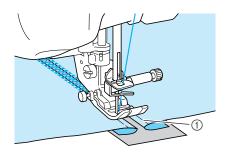




Memo

For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.

Attach presser foot "J". Align the center of the presser foot with the middle of the space between the fabrics and begin sewing.



Basting stitches



Use a thick thread.

When sewing is finished, gently tear the paper away.

Tape or Elastic Attaching

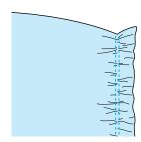
- Select a straight stitch and attach presser foot "I".
- Set the stitch length to 4.0 mm (approx. 3/16 inch), and loosen the upper thread tension to 2.0 (See pages 42 through 43).

Be sure that neither automatic reinforcement

nor automatic thread cutting | > is selected.



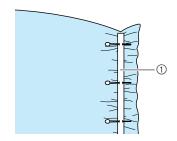
Sew two rows of straight stitches on the right side of the fabric, then pull the bobbin thread to create the necessary gather.





Before sewing the straight stitch, rotate the handwheel and pull up the bobbin thread. Holding the top and bobbin thread, pull a length of thread out from the rear of the machine. (Be sure that the presser foot is raised.)

Place the tape over the gather, and hold it in place with basting pins.



① Tape

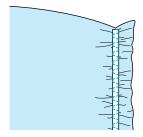
Select



Memo

For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.

Sew over the tape (or elastic).

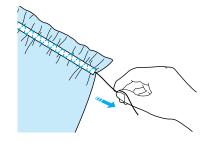




CAUTION

Be sure the needle does not strike a basting pin, or any other objects, during sewing. The thread could tangle or the needle could break, causing injury.

Pull out the straight stitch threads.



Heirloom

■ Hemstitching (1) (Daisy Stitch)

Use for sewing tablecloths, decorative hems, and decorative stitching on shirt fronts.



Memo

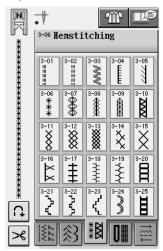
Use a light to medium weight homespun fabric with a little stiffness.



Insert a type 130/705H, size 100/16 Wing needle.

A CAUTION

- The "Automatic Threading" button cannot be used. Thread the wing needle by hand, from front to back. Using the "Automatic Threading" button may result in damage to the machine.
- A more attractive finish can be obtained if you use a "130/705H Wing" needle when sewing these patterns. If using a wing needle and the stitch width has been set manually, check that the needle will not touch the presser foot by carefully rotating the handwheel before starting sewing.
- Select a stitch and attach presser foot "N".
 - * Select any stitch between 3-01 and 3-25.





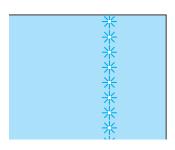
Memo

 For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.

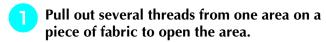


Start sewing.

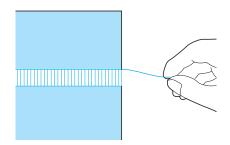
Example: Illustration of finished product



■ Hemstitching (2) (Drawn Work)



* Pull out 5 or 6 threads to leave a 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch) area open.





Memo

Loosely woven fabrics work best for this.

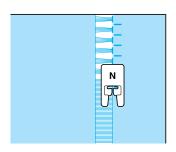


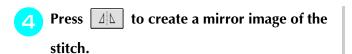


Memo

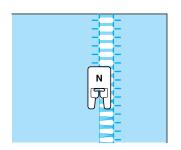
For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.

Attach presser foot "N". With the right side of the fabric facing up, sew one edge of the open area.



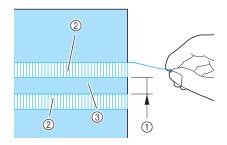


Sew the opposite side to keep the stitch symmetrical.



■ Hemstitching (3)

- Pull out several threads from both sides of the 4 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) area which are not yet open.
 - Pull out four threads, leave five threads, and then pull out four threads. The width of five threads is approximately 4 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) or less.



- ① Approx. 4 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) or less
- ② Four threads (pull out)
- ③ Five threads (leave)

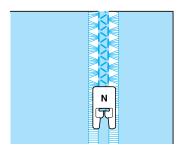




Memo

For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.

Sew the decorative stitch in the center of the five threads created above.





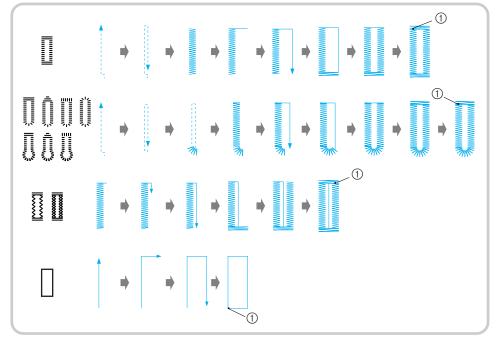
A wing needle can be used for Hemstitching

One-step Buttonholes

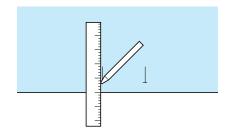
With one-step buttonholes, you can make buttonholes appropriate to the size of your button.

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications		titch width nm (inch.)]		itch length nm (inch.)]	Twin needle
		1001		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	needie
4-01	Narrow rounded buttonhole	Ā	Buttonhole on light to medium weight fabrics	5.0 (3/16)	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
1	Wide round ended buttonhole	A	Buttonholes with extra space for larger buttons	5.5 (7/32)	3.5 - 5.5 (1/8 - 7/32)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-03	Tapered round ended buttonhole	A	Reinforced waist tapered buttonholes	5.0 (3/16)	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-04	Round ended buttonhole	A	Buttonholes with vertical bar tack in heavyweight fabrics	5.0 (3/16)	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-05	Round ended buttonhole	Ā	Buttonholes with bar tack	5.0 (3/16)	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-06	Round double ended buttonhole	Ā	Buttonholes for fine, medium to heavyweight fabrics	5.0 (3/16)	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-07	Narrow squared buttonhole	Ā	Buttonholes for light to medium weight fabrics	5.0 (3/16)	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-08	Wide squared buttonhole	Ā	Buttonholes with extra space for larger decorative buttons	5.5 (7/32)	3.5 - 5.5 (1/8 - 7/32)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-09	Squared buttonhole	Ā	Heavy-duty buttonholes with vertical bar tacks	5.0 (7/32)	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-10	Stretch buttonhole	Ā	Buttonholes for stretch or woven fabrics	6.0 (15/ 64)	3.0 - 6.0 (1/8 - 15/64)	1.0 (1/16)	0.5 - 2.0 (1/32 - 1/16)	NO
4-11	Heirloom buttonhole	Ä	Buttonholes for heirloom and stretch fabrics	6.0 (15/ 64)	3.0 - 6.0 (1/8 - 15/64)	1.5 (1/16)	1.0 - 3.0 (1/1 - 1/8)	NO
4-12	Bound buttonhole	A	The first step in making bound buttonholes	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 6.0 (0 - 15/64)	2.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
4-13	Keyhole buttonhole	Ā	Buttonholes in heavyweight or thick fabrics for larger flat buttons	7.0 (1/4)	3.0 - 7.0 (1/8 - 1/4)	0.5 (1/32)	0.3 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
8	Tapered keyhole buttonhole	Ā	Buttonholes in medium to heavy weight fabrics for larger flat buttons	7.0 (1/4)	3.0 - 7.0 (1/8 - 1/4)	0.5 (1/32)	0.3 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-15	Keyhole buttonhole	Ā	Buttonholes with vertical bar tack for reinforcement in heavyweight or thick fabrics	7.0 (1/4)	3.0 - 7.0 (1/8 - 1/4)	0.5 (1/32)	0.3 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO

One-step buttonholes are sewn from the front of the presser foot to the back, as shown below.



- ① Reinforcement stitching
- Select a buttonhole stitch, and attach buttonhole foot "A".
- Mark the position and length of the buttonhole on the fabric.

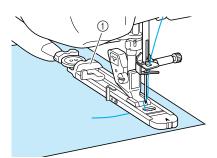




Memo

The maximum buttonhole length is about 28 mm (approx. 1-1/16 inches) (diameter + thickness of the button).

Pull out the button holder plate on the presser foot, and insert the button that will be put through the buttonhole. Then tighten the button holder plate around the button.



① Button holder plate



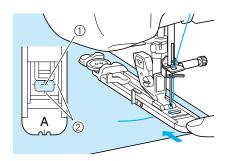
Memo

The size of the buttonhole is decided by the button holder plate holding the button.





Align the presser foot with the mark on the fabric, and lower the presser foot.



- 1) Mark on the fabric
- ② Marks on the presser foot

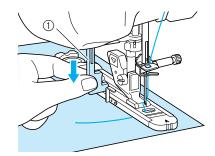


Note

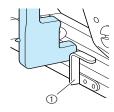
- Pass the thread underneath the presser foot.
- Slide the outside frame of the buttonhole foot backward as far as possible as shown in the illustration, making sure that there is no gap behind the part of the foot marked "A". If the buttonhole foot is not slid back as far as possible, the buttonhole will not be sewn at the correct size.



5 Lower the buttonhole lever so that it is positioned behind the metal bracket on the buttonhole foot.



1 Buttonhole lever

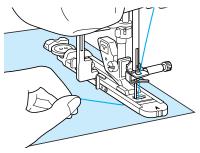


Metal bracket



Gently hold the end of the upper thread, and then start sewing.

* Feed the fabric carefully by hand while the buttonhole is sewn.



→ Once sewing is completed, the machine automatically sews reinforcement stitches, and then stops.

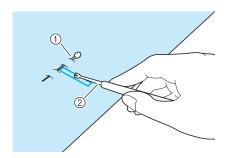


Memo

If automatic thread cutting is turned on before you start sewing, both threads are automatically cut after the reinforcement stitches are sewn. If the fabric does not feed (for example, because it is too thick), increase the stitch length setting.



Insert a pin along the inside of one of the bar tacks, and then insert the seam ripper into the center of the buttonhole and cut towards the pin.



- ① Basting pin
- ② Seam ripper



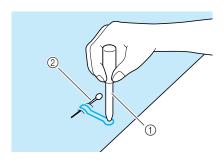
CAUTION

When using the seam ripper to open the buttonhole, do not put your hand or finger in the path of the ripper. The ripper may slip and cause injury.



Memo

For keyhole buttonholes, use the eyelet punch to make a hole in the rounded end of the buttonhole. Then insert a pin along the inside of one of the bar tacks, insert a seam ripper into the hole made with the eyelet punch, and cut towards the pin.

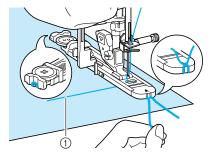


- ① Eyelet punch
- ② Basting pin

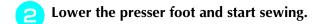
■ Sewing Stretch Fabrics

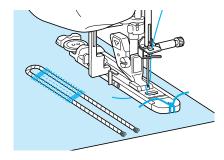
When sewing on stretch fabric with sew the buttonhole stitches over a gimp thread.

Hook the gimp thread onto the back of presser foot "A". Insert the ends into the grooves at the front of the presser foot, and then temporarily tie them there.



① Upper thread





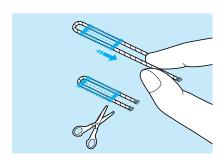


Memo

Set the width of the satin stitches to the width of the gimp thread, and set the buttonhole width to be 2-3 times the width of the gimp thread.



Once sewing is completed, gently pull the gimp thread to remove any slack, and trim off any excess.





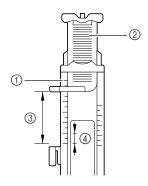
Memo

After using the seam ripper to cut open the threads over the buttonhole, trim off the threads.

■ Odd Shaped Buttons/Buttons that do not Fit into the Button Holder Plate

Use the markings on the presser foot scale to set the size of the buttonhole. One mark on the presser foot scale equals 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch).

Add the button diameter and thickness together, and then set the plate at the calculated value.

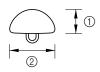


- Presser foot scale
- ② Button holder plate
- Completed measurement of diameter + thickness
- 4 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch)



Memo

For example, for a button with a diameter of 15 mm (approx. 9/16 inch) and a thickness of 10 mm (approx. 3/8 inch), the scale should be set at 25 mm (approx. 1 inch).



- ① 10 mm (approx. 3/8 inch)
- ② 15 mm (approx. 9/16 inch)

Four-step Buttonholes

You can sew 4-step buttonholes using the following 4 stitches together. You can sew any desired length for the buttonhole when using 4-step buttonholes. 4-step buttonholes are a good option when attaching oversize buttons.

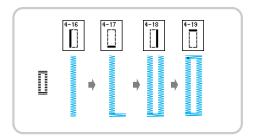


Note

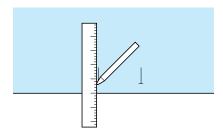
When changing the stitch settings for the left side of the buttonhole, make sure that all setting should be changed to match.

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications	-	titch width nm (inch.)]		itch length nm (inch.)]	Twin needle
		1001		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	riccuic
4-16 [_]	4 step buttonhole 1	R	Left side of 4 step buttonhole	5.0 (7/32)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-17	4 step buttonhole 2	N R	Bar tack of 4 step buttonhole	5.0 (7/32)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-18	4 step buttonhole 3	R	Right side of 4 step buttonhole	5.0 (7/32)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-19	4 step buttonhole 4	R	Bar tack of 4 step buttonhole	5.0 (7/32)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO

Four-step buttonholes are sewn as shown below.



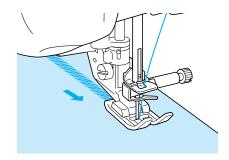
Mark the position and length of the buttonhole on the fabric.



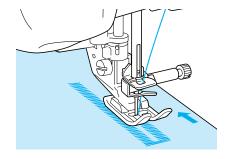
Attach monogramming foot "N", and select stitch to sew the left side of the buttonhole.



- Press the "Start/Stop" button to start sewing.
- Sew the desired length for the buttonhole and press the "Start/Stop" button again.



- Select stitch to sew the bar tack and press the "Start/Stop" button.
 - → The machine will automatically stop after sewing the bar tack.
- Select stitch | | to sew the right side of the buttonhole, and press the "Start/Stop" button to begin sewing.



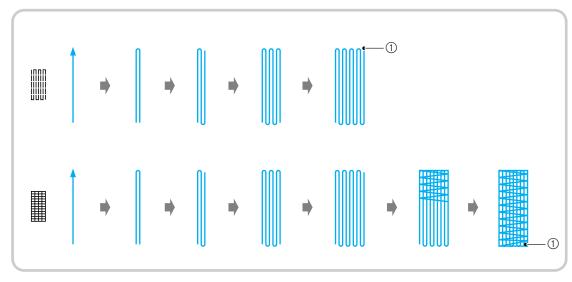
- Sew the right side of the buttonhole and press the "Start/Stop" button again.
 - Sew the right side of the buttonhole the same length as the left.
- **Select stitch** to sew the bar tack and then press the "Start/Stop" button.
 - → The machine will automatically sew off the bar tack tie and stop when the bar tack is complete.
- Raise the presser foot and remove the fabric.
- Refer to page 82 to open the buttonhole.

■ Darning

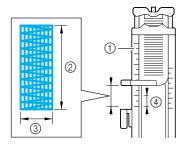
Use darning stitches for mending and other applications.

Stitch	Stitch name	Drooper		titch width nm (inch.)]	Stitch length [mm (inch.)]		Twin needle	
		1001		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	needie
4-20 INNN IIIIII	Darning	Ā	Darning of medium weight fabric	7.0 (1/4)	2.5 - 7.0 (3/32 - 1/4)	2.0 (1/16)	0.4 - 2.5 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-21	Darning	Ā	Darning of heavyweight fabric	7.0 (1/4)	2.5 - 7.0 (3/32 - 1/4)	2.0 (1/16)	0.4 - 2.5 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO

Darning is performed by sewing from the front of the presser foot to the back as shown below.



- 1) Reinforcement stitches
- Select a stitch, and attach buttonhole foot "A".
- Set the scale to the desired length of the darning.



- Presser foot scale
- ② Completed length measurement
- ③ Width 7 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)
- 4) 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch)

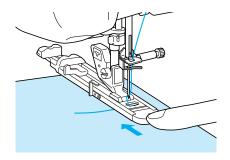


Memo

The maximum length for darning is 28 mm (approx. 1-1/16 inches).



Check that the needle drops at the desired position and lower the presser foot, making sure the upper thread passes underneath the buttonhole foot.





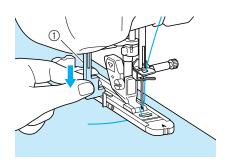
Note

- Pass the thread underneath the presser foot.
- Set the presser foot so that there is no gap behind the section marked with an "A" (the shaded area in the illustration below). If there is a gap, the size of the darning will not be correct.

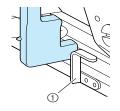




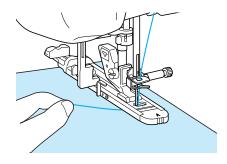
Lower the buttonhole lever so that it is positioned behind the metal bracket on the buttonhole foot.



1 Buttonhole lever



- ① Metal bracket
- Gently hold the end of the upper thread, and then press the "Start/Stop" button to start the machine.



→ Once sewing is completed, the machine automatically sews reinforcement stitches, and then stops.



Memo

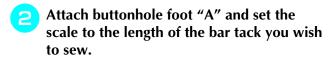
If automatic thread cutting is turned on before you start sewing, both threads are automatically cut after the reinforcement stitches are sewn. If the fabric does not feed (for example, because it is too thick), increase the stitch length setting.

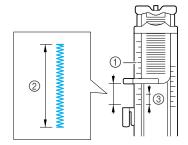
Bar Tacks

Use bar tacks to reinforce areas that will be subject to strain, such as pocket corners.

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch.)]			itch length nm (inch.)]	Twin needle
		1001		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	liceuic
4-22 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 1	Bar tack	Ä	Reinforcement at opening of pocket, etc.	2.0 (1/16)	1.0 - 3.0 (1/16 - 1/8)	0.4 (1/64)	0.3 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO





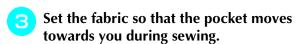


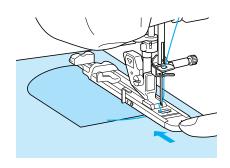
- Presser foot scale
- ② Completed length measurement
- ③ 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch)



Memo

Bar tacks can be between 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and 28 mm (approx. 1-1/16 inches). Bar tacks are usually between 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and 10 mm (approx. 3/8 inch).





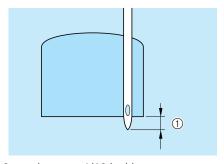


Note

- Pass the thread underneath the presser foot.
- Slide the outside frame of the buttonhole foot backward as far as possible as shown in the illustration, making sure that there is no gap behind the part of the foot marked "A". If the buttonhole foot is not slid back as far as possible, the bar tack will not be sewn to the correct size.



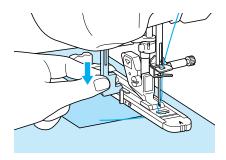
Check the first needle drop point and lower the presser foot.

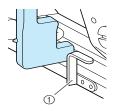


① 2 mm (approx. 1/16 inch)

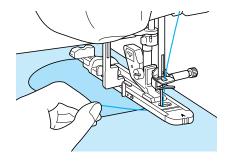


Lower the buttonhole lever so that it is positioned behind the metal bracket on the buttonhole foot.





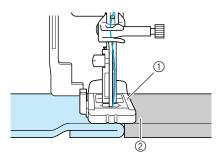
- Metal bracket
- Gently hold the end of the upper thread and begin sewing.



→ When sewing is completed, the machine will sew reinforcement stitches and stop automatically.

■ Bar Tacks on Thick Fabrics

Place a piece of folded fabric or cardboard beside the fabric being sewn to level the buttonhole foot and allow for easier feeding.



- 1) Presser foot
- ② Thick paper



If automatic thread cutting is turned on before you start sewing, both threads are automatically cut after the reinforcement stitches are sewn. If the fabric does not feed (for example, because it is too thick), increase the stitch length setting.

Button Sewing

Buttons can be sewn on using the machine.

Buttons with 2 or 4 holes can be attached.

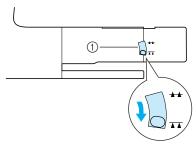
Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications			itch length nm (inch.)]	Twin needle	
		1001		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	liceale
4-23 •	Button sewing	₩ ₩	Attaching buttons	3.5 (1/8)	2.5 - 4.5 (3/32 - 3/16)	_	_	NO



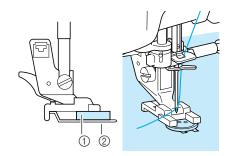
Note

 Do not use the automatic thread cutting function when sewing buttons. Otherwise, you will lose the thread ends.

- **Select** ⁴⁻²³ ⊙
- Raise the presser foot and detach the flat bed table attachment.
- Begin to lower the feed dog position switch to to lower the feed dogs.



- Feed dog position switch
- Attach button sewing foot "M", slide the button along the metal plate and into the presser foot, and lower the presser foot.



- ① Button
- ② Metal plate

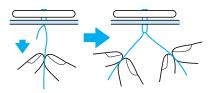
- Turn the handwheel to check that the needle goes into each hole correctly.
 - * If the needle does not reach the holes on the left side, adjust the stitch width.
 - * To attach the button more securely, repeat the process.
- Gently hold the end of the upper thread and start sewing.
 - → The machine stops automatically when sewing is finished.



CAUTION

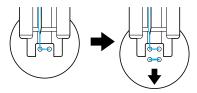
Make sure the needle does not strike the button during sewing. The needle may break and cause injury.

From the wrong side of the fabric, pull the end of the bobbin thread to pull the upper thread through to the wrong side of the fabric. Tie the two thread ends together and cut the threads.



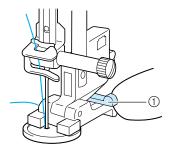
■ Attaching 4 Hole Buttons

Sew the two holes closest to you. Then raise the presser foot and move the fabric so that the needle goes into the next two holes, and sew them in the same way.



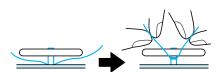
■ Attaching a Shank to the Button

Pull the shank lever toward you before sewing.

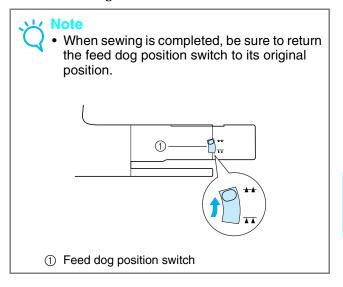


① Shank lever

Pull the two ends of the upper thread between the button and the fabric, wind them around the shank, and then tie them firmly together.



Tie the ends of the bobbin thread from the beginning and end of sewing together on the wrong side of the fabric.





Eyelet

Use this stitch for making belt holes and other similar applications.

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications		titch width mm (inch.)]		titch length mm (inch.)]	Twin needle
		1001		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	Hecule
4-24	Eyelet	N R	For making eyelets, holes on belts, etc.	7.0 (1/4)	7.0 6.0 5.0 (1/4 15/64 3/16)	7.0 (1/4)	7.0 6.0 5.0 (1/4 15/64 3/16)	NO
4-25 - 318 - 318	Star eyelet	N R	For making star-shaped eyelets on holes.	_	_	_	_	NO

- Select or 4-25 or 4-25.
- Use + in either the stitch width display or the stitch length display to choose the size of the eyelet.









(Actual size)

- ① Large 7 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)
- ② Medium 6 mm (approx. 15/64 inch)
- ③ Small 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch)

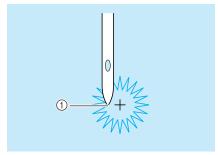


∠ Note

Only one size is available for



Attach monogramming foot "N", then turn the handwheel to check the needle drop position.



① Needle drop position

Lower the presser foot and start sewing.

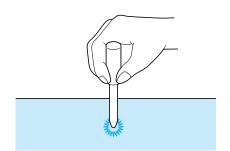
→ When sewing is finished, the machine sews reinforcement stitches and stops automatically.



Note

If the stitch pattern comes out poorly, make adjustments (see page 103).

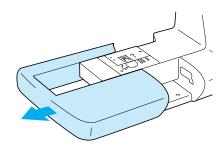
Use the eyelet punch to make a hole in the center of the stitching.



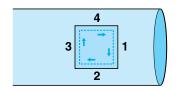
Multi-directional Sewing (Straight Stitch and Zigzag Stitch)

Use these stitch patterns to attach patches or emblems to pant legs, shirt sleeves, etc.

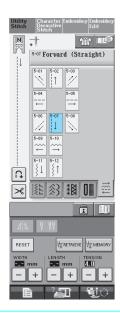
Remove the flat bed attachment to create the free arm function.



Pass the free arm through a tubular piece of fabric, and then sew in the order shown in the illustration.



and attach monogramming foot Select | "N".

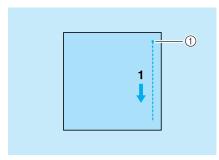




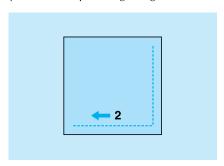
Memo

For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.

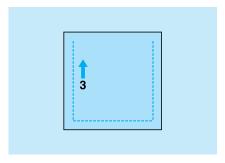
Set the needle in the fabric at the sewing start point, and sew seam "1" as shown.



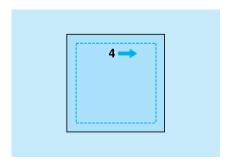
- 1 Start Point
- and sew seam "2" as shown. Select
 - The fabric will move sideways, so guide the fabric by hand to keep sewing straight.



Select $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{6-02}{1} \end{bmatrix}$ and sew seam "3" as shown.



- → The fabric feeds forward while stitching backward.
- Select and sew seam "4" as shown.



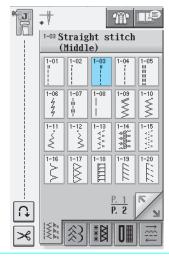
The seam will be connected to the starting point of seam 1.

Zipper Insertion

■ Centered Zipper

Use for bags and other such applications.

Select 1-03





Memo

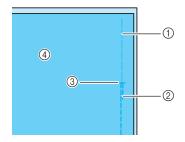
 For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.



Note

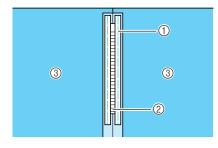
 Make sure you sew using the middle needle position.

Attach presser foot "J" and sew straight stitches up to the zipper opening. Change to a basting stitch (see page 56) and sew to the top of the fabric.

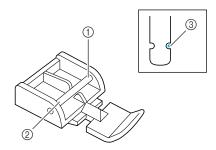


- Basting stitches
- ② Reverse stitches
- ③ End of zipper opening
- Wrong side

Press the seam allowance open and attach the zipper with a basting stitch in the middle of each side of the zipper tape.



- Basting stitches
- ② Zipper
- 3 Wrong side
- Remove presser foot "J". Align the right side of the pin in zipper foot "I" with the presser foot holder, and attach the zipper foot.

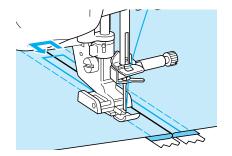


- ① Right
- ② Left
- ③ Needle drop position



CAUTION

- When using zipper foot "I", make sure the straight stitch, middle needle position is selected. Turn the handwheel to make sure the needle does not strike the presser foot. If another stitch is selected, the needle will strike the presser foot, causing the needle to break and possibly causing injury.
- Topstitch 7 to 10 mm (approx. 1/4 to 3/8 inch) from the seamed edge of the fabric, then remove the basting.



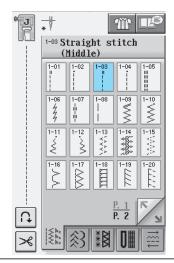
CAUTION

Make sure the needle does not strike the zipper during sewing. If the needle strikes the zipper, the needle may break, leading to injury.

■ Inserting a Side Zipper

Use for side zippers in skirts or dresses.

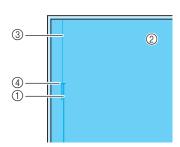
Select





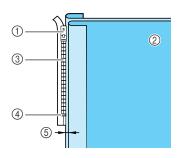
Note

- Make sure you sew using the middle needle position.
- Attach presser foot "J" and sew straight stitches up to the zipper opening. Change to a basting stitch and sew to the top of the fabric.

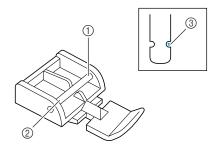


- Reverse stitches
- ② Wrong side of fabric
- ③ Basting stitches
- 4 End of zipper opening

Press the seam allowance open and align the folded hem along the teeth of the zipper, while maintaining 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch) of sewing space.



- 1 Zipper pull tab
- ② Wrong side of fabric
- 3 Zipper teeth
- 4 End of zipper opening
- ⑤ 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch)
- Remove presser foot "J".
- Align the right side of the pin in zipper foot "I" with the presser foot holder, and attach the presser foot.



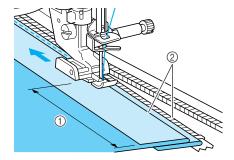
- 1) Right
- ② Left
- ③ Needle drop position



CAUTION

When using zipper foot "I", make sure the straight stitch, middle needle position is selected. Turn the handwheel to make sure the needle does not strike the presser foot. If another stitch is selected, the needle will strike the presser foot, causing the needle to break and possibly causing injury.

- Set the presser foot in the 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch) margin.
- Starting from the end of the zipper opening, sew to a point about 50 mm (approx. 2 inches) from the edge of the fabric, then stop the machine.
- Pull down the zipper slider, then continue sewing to the edge of the fabric.

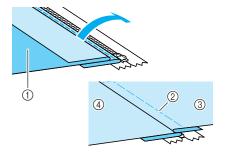


- 1) 50 mm (approx. 2 inches)
- ② 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch)

CAUTION

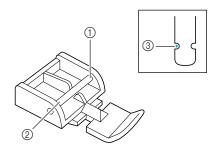
Make sure the needle does not strike the zipper during sewing. If the needle strikes the zipper, the needle may break, leading to injury.

Close the zipper, turn the fabric over, and sew a basting stitch.

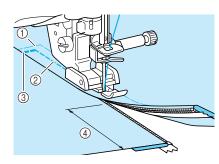


- ① Front of the skirt (wrong side of fabric)
- ② Basting stitches
- ③ Front of the skirt (right side of fabric)
- 4 Back of the skirt (right side of fabric)

- Remove the presser foot, and reattach it so that the left side of the pin is attached to the presser foot holder.
 - When sewing the left side of the zipper, the needle should drop on the right side of the presser foot. When sewing the right side of the zipper, the needle should drop on the left side of the presser foot.



- ① Right
- ② Left
- 3 Needle drop position
- Set the fabric so that the left edge of the presser foot touches the edge of the zipper teeth.
- Sew reverse stitches at the top of the zipper, then continue sewing.
- Stop sewing about 50 mm (approx. 2 inches) from the edge of the fabric, leave the needle in the fabric, and remove the basting stitches.
- Open the zipper and sew the rest of the seam.



- Basting stitches
- ② 7 to 10 mm (approx. 1/4 inch to 3/8 inch)
- ③ Reverse stitches
- 4 50 mm (approx. 2 inches)



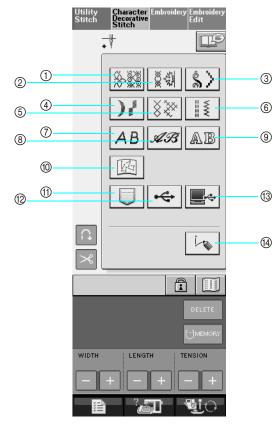
Chapter 4

Character/ Decorative Stitches

SELECTING STITCH PATTERNS	98
■ Stitch Selection Screens	99
Selecting Decorative Stitch Patterns/7mm Decorative Stitch Patterns/Satin Stitch Patterns/	
7mm Satin Stitch Patterns/Cross Stitch/Utility Decorative Stitch Patterns	100
Alphabet Characters	
■ Deleting Characters	101
■ Character Spacing Adjustment	101
SEWING STITCH PATTERNS	102
Sewing Attractive Finishes	102
Basic Sewing	
Making Adjustments	
EDITING STITCH PATTERNS	
EDITING STITCH PATTERNS	105
■ Key Functions	105
Changing the Size	106
Changing the Length (for 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns Only)	107
Creating a Vertical Mirror Image	107
Creating a Horizontal Mirror Image	107
Sewing a Pattern Continuously	107
Changing Thread Density (for Satin Stitch Patterns Only)	108
Checking the Image	108
COMBINING STITCH PATTERNS	110
Before Combining	110
Combining Various Stitch Patterns	110
Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns	112
Combining Horizontal Mirror Image Stitch Patterns	112
Combining Stitch Patterns of Different Length	113
Making Step Stitch Patterns (for 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns Only)	114
■ More Examples	115
USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION	116
Stitch Data Precautions	116
■ Types of Stitch Data that can be Used	116
■ Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used	116
■ Computers and Operating Systems with the Following Specifications can be Used	116
■ Precautions on Using the Computer to Create and Save Data	116
■ Trademarks	117
Saving Stitch Patterns in the Machine's Memory	118
■ If the Memory is Full	
Saving Stitch Patterns to USB Media (Commercially Available)	120
Saving Stitch Patterns in the Computer	
Retrieving Stitch Patterns from the Machine's Memory	
Recalling from USB Media	
Recalling from the Computer	124

SELECTING STITCH PATTERNS

Press Press Character Press Press to display the screen below.



- ① Decorative stitch patterns
- ② 7mm decorative stitch patterns. You can set stitch length and width.
- ③ Satin stitch patterns
- ④ 7mm satin stitch patterns. You can set stitch length and width.
- ⑤ Cross stitch
- 6 Utility decorative stitch patterns
- Alphabet characters (gothic font)
- Alphabet characters (outline)
- 1 Patterns stored in "MY CUSTOM STITCH", (see page 208)
- ① Patterns saved in the machine's memory (see page 122)
- Patterns saved in USB media (see page 123)
- Patterns saved on the computer (see page 123)
- Press this key to create your own stitches with the "MY CUSTOM STITCH™," function (see page 202).



Note

• If the screen is locked (), unlock the screen by pressing . While the screen is locked, no other key can be operated.

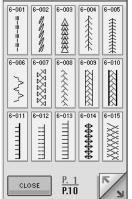
■ Stitch Selection Screens

There are 9 categories of Character/Decorative stitch patterns. stitch selection screen for that category.

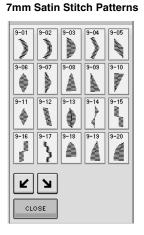


indicates that there is more than one

Decorative Stitch Patterns



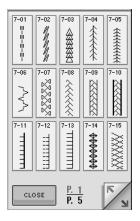
y –



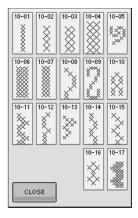
Alphabet Characters (Gothic Font)



7mm Decorative Stitch Patterns



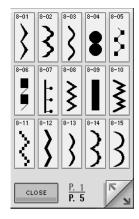
Cross Stitch



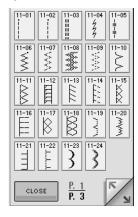
Alphabet Characters (Handwriting Font)



Satin Stitch Patterns



Utility Decorative Stitch Patterns



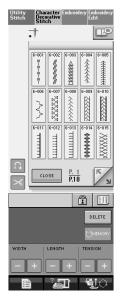
Alphabet Characters (Outline)





Selecting Decorative Stitch Patterns/7mm Decorative Stitch Patterns/Satin Stitch Patterns/ 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns/Cross Stitch/Utility Decorative Stitch Patterns

- Select the category of the pattern you want to sew.
- Press the key of the stitch pattern you want to sew.
 - Press to view the next page.
 Press to view the previous page.
 - * To select a different stitch pattern, press When the current stitch pattern is erased, select the new stitch pattern.



→ The selected pattern is displayed.

Alphabet Characters





Press ABC abc 0~9?!- Äåä- to change the selection screen, and then enter the characters that you want to sew.

* If you want to continue entering characters in a different font, press _____, and then repeat from step _____.





Memo

There are three fonts for alphabet character stitching.

■ Deleting Characters

Press DELETE to delete the last character.





Memo

Characters are deleted individually starting with the last character entered.

2 Select the correct character.



■ Character Spacing Adjustment

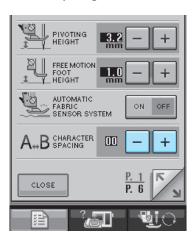
Press

ress to display the setting screen.



Press — + to adjust character spacing.

* Press + to increase and press - to decrease the character spacing.



The setting range is from "00" through "10". The default setting is "00".

Each setting equals a specific distance between characters.

mm Example:	Value
0	00
0.18	01
0.36	02
0.54	03
0.72	04
0.9	05
1.08	06
1.26	07
1.44	08
1.62	09
1.8	10



Memo

Changing Character Spacing by this method, pertains to all characters. Spacing changes are valid not only while entering characters but also before and after the entering of characters.

SEWING STITCH PATTERNS

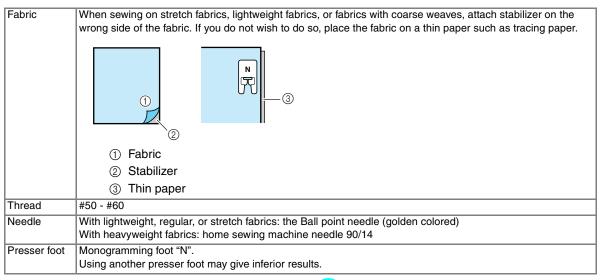
Sewing Attractive Finishes

To achieve attractive results when sewing character/decorative stitches, check the table below for the proper fabric/needle/thread combinations.



Note

- Other factors, such as fabric thickness, stabilizer material, etc., also have an effect on the stitch, so you should always sew a few trial stitches before beginning your project.
- When sewing satin stitch patterns, there may be shrinking or bunching of stitches, so be sure to attach a stabilizer material.
- Guide the fabric with your hand to keep the fabric feeding straight and even during sewing.



Basic Sewing



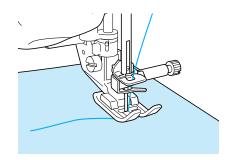
Select a stitch pattern.



Attach monogramming foot "N".

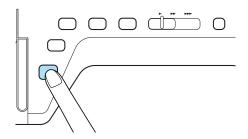


Place the fabric under the presser foot, pull the upper thread out to the side, and then lower the presser foot.





Press the "Start/Stop" button to start sewing.





CAUTION

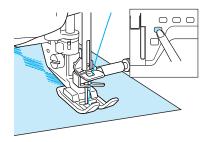
 When sewing 7 mm satin stitch patterns and the stitches are bunched, lengthen the stitch length. If you continue sewing when the stitches are bunched, the needle may bend or break (see "Setting the Stitch Length" on page 42).



Memo

If the fabric is pulled or pushed during sewing, the pattern may not turn out correctly. Also, depending on the pattern, there may be movement to the left and right as well as front and back. Guide the fabric with your hand to keep the fabric feeding straight and even during sewing.

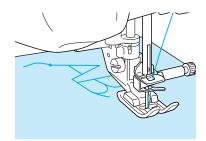
- Press the "Start/Stop" button to stop sewing.
- Press the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew reinforcement stitches.





Memo

 When sewing character stitches, the machine automatically sews reinforcement stitches at the beginning and end of each character.



 When sewing is completed, trim any excess thread.





Note

 When sewing some patterns, the needle will stop in the raised position while the fabric is fed due to the operation of the needle bar separation mechanism which is used in this machine. At such times, a clicking sound different from the sound generated during sewing will be heard. This sound is normal and is not the sign of a malfunction.

Making Adjustments

Your stitch pattern may sometimes turn out poorly, depending on the type or thickness of fabric, the stabilizer material used, sewing speed, etc. If your sewing does not turn out well, sew trial stitches using the same conditions as the real sewing, and adjust the stitch pattern as explained below. If the pattern does not turn out well even after making

adjustments based on the pattern, make adjustments for each pattern individually.



Press

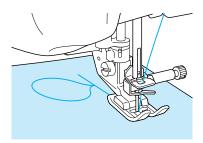
and select



on P.10.







Compare the finished pattern to the illustration of the correct pattern below.







Press , and then adjust the pattern with the FINE ADJUST VERTI. or HORIZ. displays.



- * If the pattern is bunched:
 - Press + in the FINE ADJUST VERTI. display.
- → The displayed value increases each time the button is pressed and the pattern will lengthen.







- * If the pattern has gaps:
 - Press in the FINE ADJUST VERTI. display.
- → The displayed value decreases each time the button is pressed and the pattern will shorten.







- * If the pattern is skewed to the left:
 - Press + in the FINE ADJUST HORIZ. display.
- → The displayed value increases each time the button is pressed and the pattern will slide to the right.







- * If the pattern is skewed to the right:
 - Press in the FINE ADJUST HORIZ. display.
- → The displayed value decreases each time the button is pressed and the pattern will slide to the left.







- **5** Sew the stitch pattern again.
 - * If the stitch pattern still comes out poorly, make adjustments again. Adjust until the stitch pattern comes out correctly.



Memo

You can sew with the setting screen on the display.



EDITING STITCH PATTERNS

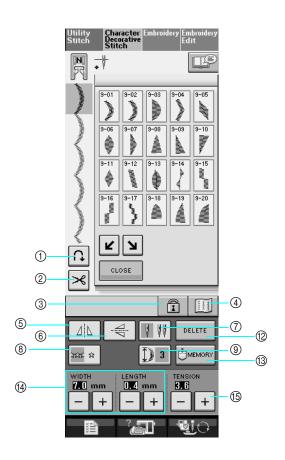
■ Key Functions

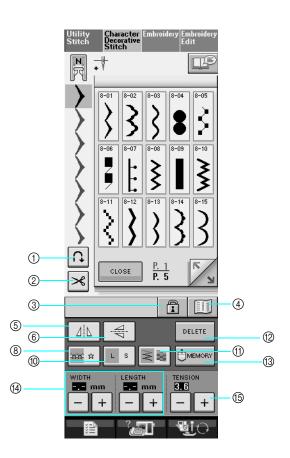
You can create just the finish you want using the editing functions. Make patterns larger or smaller, make mirror images, etc.

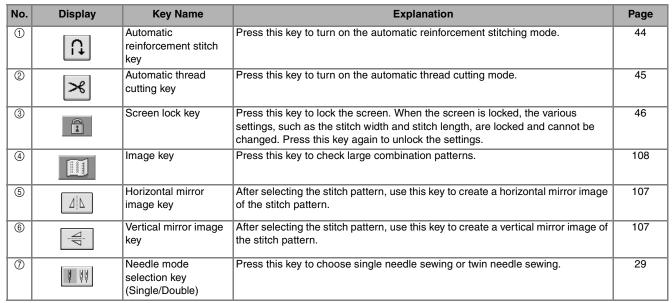


Note

• Some editing functions cannot be used with certain stitch patterns. Only the functions for the displayed keys are available when a pattern is selected.







No.	Display	Key Name	Explanation	Page
8	Tables St.	Single/Repeat sewing key	Press this key to choose single stitches or continuous stitches.	107
9	1 3	Elongation key	When 7mm satin stitch patterns are selected, press this key to choose from 5 automatic length settings, without changing the stitch zigzag width or stitch length settings.	107
100	L S	Size selection key	Use this key to select the size of the stitch pattern (large, small).	106
11)	***	Thread density key	After selecting the stitch pattern, use this key to change the thread density of the pattern.	108
12	DELETE	Delete key	When you make a mistake selecting a stitch pattern, use this key to delete the mistake. When you make a mistake in combining stitch patterns, use this key to delete stitch patterns.	100, 101
13	MEMORY	Memory key	Use this key to save stitch pattern combinations.	118-119
14	WIDTH LENGTH (100 mm) (200 mm) (200 mm) (200 mm)	Stitch width and stitch length key	Shows the stitch width and stitch length of the selected stitch pattern. The machine has default settings.	42-43
(5)	TENSION B.G	Thread tension key	Shows the thread tension setting for the selected stitch pattern. The machine has default settings.	43

Changing the Size

Select a stitch pattern, then press to change the size of the stitch pattern. The stitch pattern will be sewn in the size highlighted on the key.

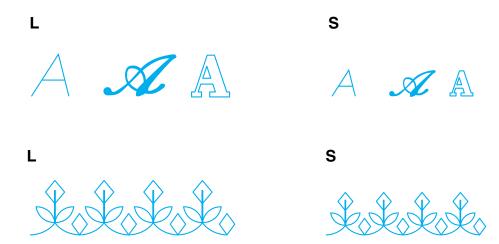




Memo

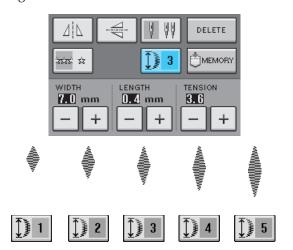
- If you continue entering stitch patterns after changing the size, those patterns will also be sewn in that size.
- You cannot change the size of combined stitch patterns once the stitch pattern is entered.

Actual Stitch Pattern Size



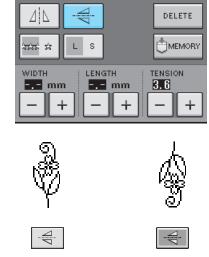
Changing the Length (for 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns Only)

When stitch patterns are selected, press to choose from 5 automatic length settings, without changing the stitch zigzag width or stitch length settings.



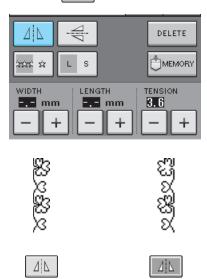
Creating a Vertical Mirror Image

To create a vertical mirror image, select a stitch pattern then press -.



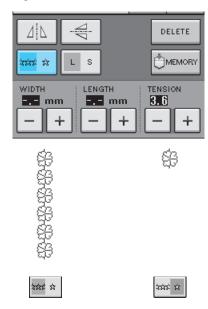
Creating a Horizontal Mirror Image

To create a horizontal mirror image, select a stitch pattern then press $\boxed{4}$.



Sewing a Pattern Continuously

Press to select continuous sewing or single stitch sewing.





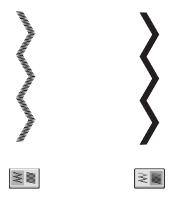
Memo

To finish a complete motif while sewing the pattern continuously, you can press the key while sewing. The machine will automatically stop when the motif is finished.

Changing Thread Density (for Satin Stitch Patterns Only)

After selecting the pattern, press | to select your preferred thread density.





A CAUTION

If the stitches bunch when thread density is changed to . return the thread density to . If you continue sewing when the stitches are bunched, the needle may bend or break.



Memo

- Even if you select a new pattern after changing the thread density, the thread density remains the same until you change it.
- You cannot change thread density for a combined pattern after the combination is finished.

Checking the Image

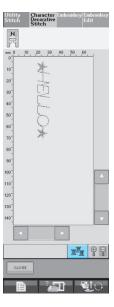
You can display an actual size image of the selected stitch pattern. You can also check and change the colors of the image on the screen.



Press .



- → An image of the selected pattern is displayed.
- Press to change the thread color in the image.



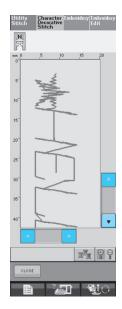
ightarrow The color changes every time you press the button.



Press to display the enlarged image.



Use to view any part of the image that extends out of the viewable display area.



Press to return to the original screen.



Memo

You can also sew from this screen when the presser foot symbol is displayed.

COMBINING STITCH PATTERNS

You can combine many varieties of stitch patterns, such as character stitches, cross stitches, satin stitches, or stitches you design with MY CUSTOM STITCH function (see chapter 7 for information about MY CUSTOM STITCH). You can also combine stitch patterns of different sizes, mirror image stitch patterns, and others.

Before Combining

Single stitch sewing is automatically selected for sewing combined patterns. If you want to sew the pattern continuously, press after finishing the stitch pattern combination.

When changing sizes, creating mirror images, or making other adjustments to a combined stitch pattern, be sure to edit the selected stitch pattern before selecting the next one. You cannot edit a stitch pattern once the next stitch pattern is selected.

Combining Various Stitch Patterns

Example:











Press



 $\,\rightarrow\,$ The display returns to the stitch selection screen.

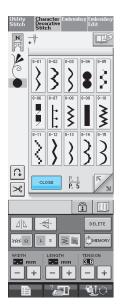








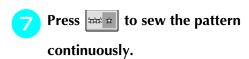






Memo

Patterns are deleted individually starting with the last pattern entered by pressing DELETE .



Press to view the completed pattern (see page 108).

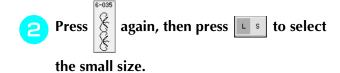
Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns

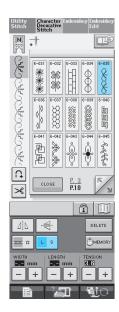
Example:



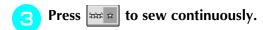


→ The large size stitch will be selected.





ightarrow The pattern is displayed in a smaller size.





→ The entered pattern is repeated.

Combining Horizontal Mirror Image Stitch Patterns

Example:





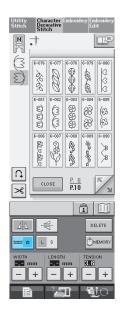
Press



again, then press \square



- \rightarrow The pattern is flipped along a vertical axis.
- Press .

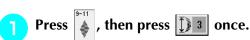


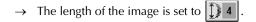
→ The entered pattern is repeated.

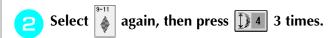
Combining Stitch Patterns of Different Length

Example:











 \rightarrow The length of the image is set to $\boxed{1}$ 2.







→ The entered pattern is repeated.

Making Step Stitch Patterns (for 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns Only)

You can use the **L** keys with 7mm satin stitch patterns to create a step effect.

Stitch patterns sewn so that they create a step effect are called step stitch patterns.

- * Press to move the stitch pattern a distance equal to half of the stitch pattern's size to the left.
- * Press to move the stitch pattern a distance equal to half of the stitch pattern's size to the right.



Example:



- Press 9-11
- Press 🔽.



 \rightarrow The next stitch pattern will move to the right.







Press .



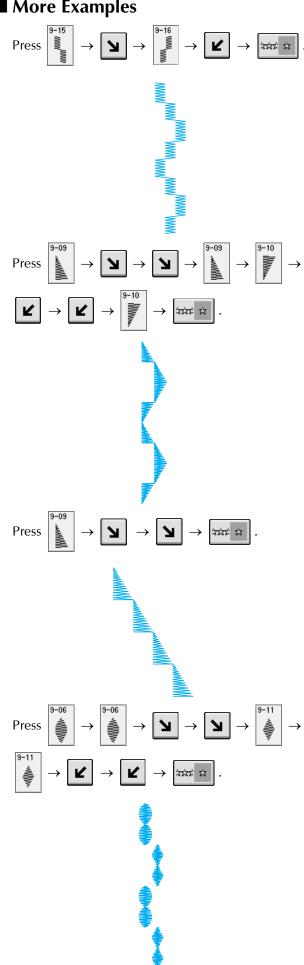
→ The next stitch pattern will move to the left.





 \rightarrow The entered pattern is repeated.





USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION

Stitch Data Precautions

Observe the following precautions when using stitch data other than that created and saved in this machine.

■ Types of Stitch Data that can be Used

• Only .pmu stitch data files can be used with this machine. Using data other than that created using this machine may cause the machine to malfunction.

■ Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used

Stitch data can be saved to or recalled from USB media. Use media that meets the following specifications.

- USB Floppy disk drive
- USB Flash drive (USB Flash memory)

Stitch data can be recalled only.

• USB CD-ROM, CD-R, CD-RW drives

You can also use the following types of USB media with the USB Memory Card Reader/Writer.

- Secure Digital (SD) Card
- CompactFlash
- Memory Stick
- Smart Media
- Multi Media Card (MMC)
- XD-Picture Card



√ Note

- Some USB media may not be usable with this machine. Please visit our website for more details.
- USB hubs cannot be used with this machine. The machine will not recognize the above USB devices or USB memory cards through a USB hub.
- The access lamp will begin blinking after inserting USB Devices/Media, and it will take about 5 to 6 seconds to recognize the Devices/Media. (Time will differ depending on the USB Device/Media).
- When a file folder is necessary to create, use a computer.

■ Computers and Operating Systems with the Following Specifications can be Used

• Compatible models:

IBM PC with a USB port as standard equipment

IBM PC-compatible computer equipped with a USB port as standard equipment

• Compatible operating systems:

Microsoft Windows 98SE/Me/2000/XP/Windows Vista/7

(Windows 98SE requires a driver. Download the driver from our Web site (www.brother.com). In addition, only Windows 98 Second Edition can use the driver.).

■ Precautions on Using the Computer to Create and Save Data

• If the file name of stitch data cannot be identified, for example, because the name contains special characters, the file is not displayed. If this occurs, change the name of the file.

■ Trademarks

- Secure Digital (SD) Card is a registered trademark or a trademark of SD Card Association.
- CompactFlash is a registered trademark or a trademark of Sandisk Corporation.
- Memory Stick is a registered trademark or a trademark of Sony Corporation.
- Smart Media is a registered trademark or a trademark of Toshiba Corporation.
- Multi Media Card (MMC) is a registered trademark or a trademark of Infineon Technologies AG.
- xD-Picture Card is a registered trademark or a trademark of Fuji Photo Film Co. Ltd.
- IBM is a registered trademark or a trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.
- Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Each company whose software title is mentioned in this manual has a Software License Agreement specific to its proprietary programs.

All other brands and product names mentioned in this manual are registered trademarks of their respective companies. However, the explanations for markings such as [®] and TM are not clearly described within the text.



Saving Stitch Patterns in the Machine's Memory

You can save often-used stitch patterns in the machine's memory. The machine's memory can hold up to 20 stitch patterns.



⊥√ Note

• Do not turn the main power to OFF while the "Saving" screen is displayed. You will lose the stitch pattern you are saving.



Memo

- It takes a few seconds to save a stitch pattern.
- See page 122 for information on retrieving a saved stitch pattern.









Press to return to the original screen without saving.



The "Saving" screen is displayed. When the pattern is saved, the display returns to the original screen automatically.

■ If the Memory is Full

If this screen appears while you are trying to save a pattern on the machine's memory, the memory is too full to hold the currently selected stitch pattern. To save the stitch pattern in the machine's memory, you have to delete a previously saved stitch pattern.

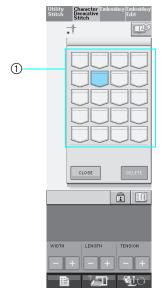


to return to the original screen Press without saving.



Choose a stitch pattern to delete.

- Press so the pattern saved in that pocket appears. If the entire saved stitch pattern is not displayed, press to view the entire stitch pattern.
- Press CLOSE if you decide not to delete the stitch pattern.



① Pockets holding saved stitch patterns





→ A confirmation message appears.



If you decide not to delete the stitch pattern, press



The machine deletes the stitch pattern, then automatically saves the new stitch pattern.



Saving Stitch Patterns to USB Media (Commercially Available)

When sending stitch patterns from the machine to USB media, plug the USB media into the machine's USB port. Depending on the type of USB media being used, either directly plug the USB device into the machine's USB port or plug the USB Card Writer/Reader into the machine's USB port.



Memo

Some USB media may not be usable with this machine. Please visit our web site for more details.

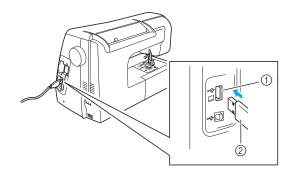


Press memory.





Insert the USB media into the USB port connector on the machine.



- ① USB port connector for media
- ② USB media



Memo

- The USB media can be inserted or removed at any time.
- Do not insert anything other than USB media into the USB media port connector. Otherwise, the USB media drive may be damaged.



* Press to return to the original screen without saving.



→ The "Saving" screen is displayed. When the pattern is saved, the display returns to the original screen automatically.

Saving Stitch Patterns in the Computer

Using the included USB cable, the stitch machine can be connected to your computer, and the stitch patterns can be temporarily retrieved from and saved on your computer.



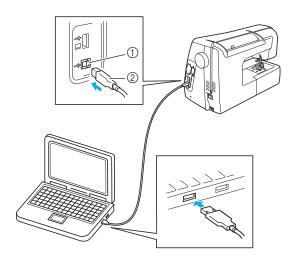
Note

Do not turn the main power to OFF while the "Saving" screen is displayed. You will lose the stitch pattern you are saving.



Plug the USB cable connector into the corresponding USB port connectors for the computer and for the machine.

The USB cable can be plugged into the USB port connectors on the computer and machine whether or not they are turned on.



- 1) USB port connector for computer
- ② USB cable connector
- → The "Removable Disk" icon will appear in "My Computer" on the computer.



Note

- The connectors on the USB cable can only be inserted into a connector in one direction. If it is difficult to insert the connector, do not insert it with force and check the orientation of the connector.
- For details on the position of the USB port on the computer, refer to the instruction manual for the correesponding equipment.









Press |

CLOSE to return to the original screen Press without saving.

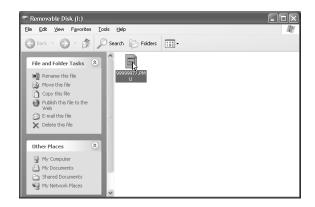


The stitch pattern will be temporarily saved to "Removable Disk" under "My Computer".





Select the stitch pattern's .pmu file and copy the file to the computer.





Note

 Do not turn off the machine while the "Saving" screen is showing. You may lose the data.

Retrieving Stitch Patterns from the Machine's Memory



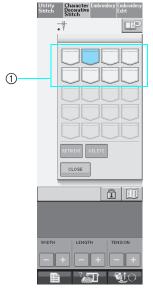
Press |



→ The pocket selection screen appears.

Choose a stitch pattern to retrieve.

- * Press so the pattern saved in that pocket appears. If the entire saved stitch pattern is not displayed, press to view the entire stitch pattern.
- * Press to return to the original screen without saving.



① Pockets holding saved stitch patterns



* Press | DELETE | to delete the stitch pattern.



→ The selected stitch pattern is retrieved and the sewing screen will be displayed.

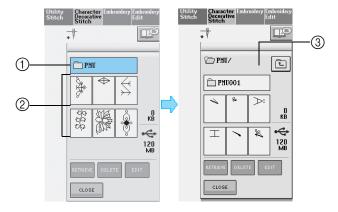
Recalling from USB Media

You can recall a specific stitch pattern from either directly USB media or a folder in the USB media. If the stitch pattern is under the folder, move down layers of folders following a path to it.

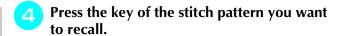
- Insert the USB Media into the USB port connector on the machine (see page 120).
- Press 🛶.



- → Stich patterns and a folder in a top folder are displayed.
- Press when there is a subfolder to sort two or more stitch patterns to USB media, the stitch pattern in the subfolder is displayed.
 - * Press to return to the original screen without recalling.



- ① Folder name
- ② Stitch patterns in a top folder: "key" shows only the first pattern over if the patterns is combined.
- ③ Path
- → The path shows the current holder at the top of the list.
 Stitch patterns and a folder in a subfolder are displayed.
- * Press to return to the previous folder.





- Press RETRIEVE.
 - * Press DELETE to delete the stitch pattern.

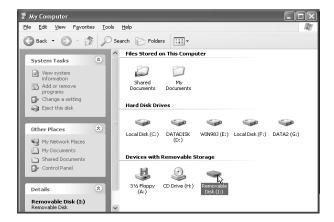


→ The selected stitch pattern is recalled and the sewing screen will be displayed.

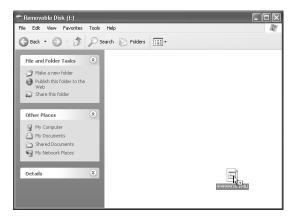


Recalling from the Computer

- Plug the USB cable connector into the corresponding USB connectors for the computer and for the machine (see page 121).
- On the computer, open "My Computer" then go to "Removable Disk".



Move/copy the pattern data to "Removable Disk".



→ Stitch pattern data in "Removable Disk" is written to the machine.



∠ Note

- While data is being written, do not disconnect the USB cable.
- Do not create folders within "Removable Disk". Since folders are not displayed, stitch pattern data within folders cannot be recalled.





- → The stitch patterns in the computer are displayed on the selection screen.
- Press the key of the stitch pattern you want to recall.
 - * Press CLOSE to return to the original screen without recalling.



- Press RETRIEVE.
 - * Press DELETE to delete the stitch pattern.



→ The selected stitch pattern is recalled and the sewing screen will be displayed.



Note

 The pattern recalled from the computer is only temporarily written to the machine. It is erased from the machine when the machine is turned off. If you wish to keep the stitch pattern, store it in the machine (see "Saving Stitch Patterns in the Machine's Memory" on page 118).



Chapter 5 Embroidery

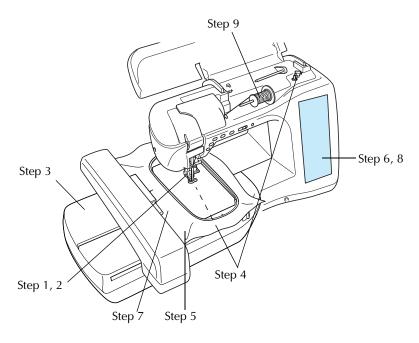
BEFORE EMBROIDERING126
Embroidery Step by Step126
Attaching Embroidery Foot "W"127
Attaching the Embroidery Unit128
■ About the Embroidery Unit
SELECTING PATTERNS130
■ Copyright Information
Selecting Embroidery Patterns/Heirloom Patterns/Border
Patterns/Cross stitch Patterns/Floral alphabet Patterns 132
Selecting Alphabet Character Patterns 133
Selecting Frame Patterns
Selecting Patterns from Embroidery Cards
■ About Embroidery Cards (Sold Separately)
VIEWING THE SEWING SCREEN136
■ Key Functions137
PREPARING THE FABRIC138
Attaching Iron-on Stabilizers (backing) to the Fabric 138
Hooping the Fabric in the Embroidery Frame139
Types of Embroidery Frames
■ Inserting the Fabric
Embroidering Small Fabrics or Fabric Edges 141
■ Embroidering Small Fabrics141
■ Embroidering Edges or Corners
ATTACHING THE EMBROIDERY FRAME143
■ Removing the Embroidery Frame143
CONFIRMING THE PATTERN POSITION144
Checking the Pattern Position144
Previewing the Completed Pattern 145
SEWING AN EMBROIDERY PATTERN146
Sewing Attractive Finishes
■ Embroidery Needle Plate Cover146
Sewing Embroidery Patterns147
■ When Threading Manually148 Sewing Embroidery Patterns Which Use Appliqué148
ADJUSTMENTS DURING THE EMBROIDERY
PROCESS150
If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread150
If the Thread Breaks During Sewing151
Restarting from the Beginning 152
Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power 152

MAKING EMBROIDERT ADJUSTMENTS	154
Adjusting Thread Tension	154
■ Correct Thread Tension	
■ Upper Thread is Too Tight	
Upper Thread is Too Loose	154
Using the Automatic Thread Cutting Function	
(END COLOR TRIM)	155
Using the Thread Trimming Function (JUMP STITCH	
TRIM)	155
■ Selecting the length of JUMP STITCH not to trim	
Adjusting the Embroidery Speed	156
Changing the Thread Color Display	157
Changing the Embroidery Frame Display	158
REVISING THE PATTERN	159
Changing the Pattern Position	159
Aligning the Pattern and the Needle	
Changing the Size	
Rotating the Pattern	
Creating a Horizontal Mirror Image	
Changing the Density (Alphabet Character	102
and Frame Patterns Only)	160
•	
Changing the Colors of Alphabet Character Patterns	163
USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION	164
Embroidery Data Precautions	164
■ Types of Embroidery Data that can be Used	164
■ Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used	164
■ Computers and Operating Systems with the Following Specifications can be Used	46.
■ Precautions on Using the Computer to Create	164
and Save Data	165
■ Tajima (.dst) Embroidery Data	
■ Trademarks	
Saving Embroidery Patterns in the Machine's Memory	
■ If the Memory is Full	166
(Commercially Available)	160
•	
Saving Embroidery Patterns in the Computer	
Retrieving Patterns from the Machine's Memory	
Recalling from USB Media	
Recalling from the Computer	
EMBROIDERY APPLICATIONS	173
Using a Frame Pattern to Make an Appliqué (1)	173
Using a Funna Dattam to Malia an Applicate (2)	174

BEFORE EMBROIDERING

Embroidery Step by Step

Follow the steps below to prepare the machine for embroidery.



Step #	Aim	Action	Page
1	Presser foot attachment	Attach embroidery foot "W".	127
2	Checking the needle	Use needle 75/11 for embroidery. *	36
3	Embroidery unit attachment	Attach the embroidery unit.	128
4	Bobbin thread setup	For the bobbin thread, wind embroidery bobbin thread and set it in place.	19
5	Fabric preparation	Attach a stabilizer material to the fabric, and hoop it in the embroidery frame.	138
6	Pattern selection	Turn the main power to ON, and select an embroidery pattern.	130
7	Embroidery frame attachment	Attach the embroidery frame to the embroidery unit.	143
8	Checking the layout	Check and adjust the size and position of the embroidery.	144
9	Embroidery thread setup	Set up embroidery thread according to the pattern.	25

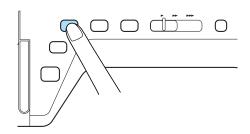
tis recommended that a 90/14 needle should be used when embroidering on heavy weight fabrics or stabilizing products (for example; denim, puffy foam, etc.).

Embroidery

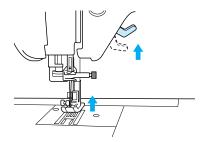
Attaching Embroidery Foot "W"

A CAUTION

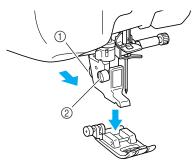
- When attaching a presser foot, always press on the screen. You may accidentally press the "Start/Stop" button and possibly cause injury.
- Be sure to use embroidery foot "W" when doing embroidery. Using another presser foot may cause the needle to strike the presser foot, causing the needle to bend or break and possibly cause injury.
- Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.



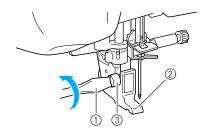
- Press W.
 - → The key appears as
- **3** Raise the presser foot lever.



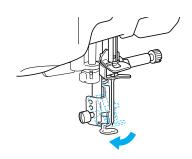
Push the black button on the presser foot holder and remove the presser foot.



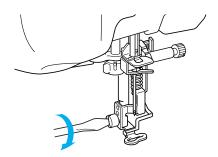
- ① Black button
- ② Presser foot holder
- → Remove the presser foot from the presser foot holder.
- Use the included screwdriver to loosen the screw of the presser foot holder, then remove the presser foot holder.



- ① Screwdriver
- ② Presser foot holder
- ③ Presser foot holder screw
- → Remove the presser foot holder.
- 6 Lower the presser foot lever.
- Position embroidery foot "W" on the presser foot bar so that the arm of embroidery foot "W" is in contact with the back of the needle holder.



Use the included screwdriver to firmly tighten the screw of the presser foot holder.



CAUTION

- Use the included screwdriver to firmly tighten the screw of the presser foot holder. If the screw is loose, the needle may strike the presser foot and possibly cause injury.

Press to unlock all keys and

buttons.

Attaching the Embroidery Unit

■ About the Embroidery Unit

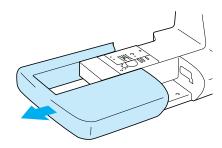
CAUTION

- Do not move the machine with the embroidery unit attached. The embroidery unit could fall off and cause injury.
- Keep your hands and foreign objects away from the embroidery carriage and frame when the machine is embroidering. Otherwise, injury may result.
- If the embroidery unit could not be initialized correctly, a buzzer will sound. If this happens, go through the initialization process again. This is not a malfunction.

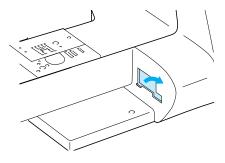


- You can sew utility stitches even while the embroidery unit is attached.
- Be sure to turn off the power before installing the embroidery unit. Otherwise, the machine may be damaged.
- Do not touch the inner connector of the embroidery unit. The pins on the embroidery unit connection may be damaged.
- · Do not apply strong force to the embroidery unit carriage or pick up the unit by the carriage. Otherwise, the embroidery unit may be damaged.
- · Store the embroidery unit in the proper storage case.



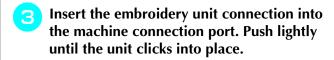


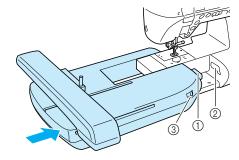
Open the cover of the connection port.





Be sure to replace the cover when the embroidery unit is not installed.





- 1) Embroidery unit connection
- ② Machine connection port
- ③ Feed dog position switch



- Be sure there is no gap between the embroidery unit and the sewing machine. If there is a gap, the embroidery patterns will not embroider with the correct registration.
- Do not push on the carriage when installing the embroidery unit onto the machine. Moving the carriage may damage the embroidery unit.
- Be sure to set the feed dog position switch to right to lower the feed dogs.

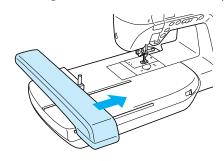
Turn the main power to ON.

→ The following message will appear.





→ The carriage will move to the initialization position.





• A confirmation message to lower the framesecuring lever after the carriage moves to its initial position.



The message will disappear after 15 seconds or press to move to the next step.

■ Removing the Embroidery Unit



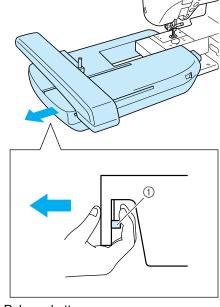
→ The carriage will move to the removal position.

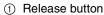
A CAUTION

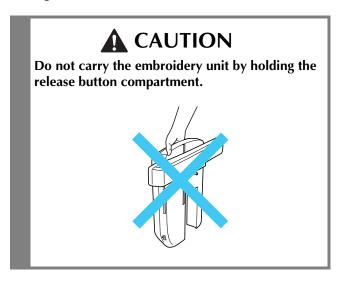
- Always remove the embroidery frame before pressing . Otherwise, the frame may strike the embroidery foot, and possibly cause injury.
- The embroidery unit will not fit in the storage case if this step is not done.
- Turn the main power to OFF.



- Be sure to turn the main power to OFF. Otherwise, the machine may be damaged.
- Hold down the release button, and pull the embroidery unit away from the machine.







SELECTING PATTERNS

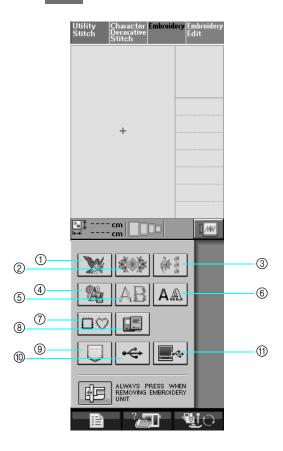
■ Copyright Information

The patterns stored in the sewing machine and embroidery cards are intended for private use only. Any public or commercial use of copyrighted patterns is an infringement of copyright law and is strictly prohibited.

There are many character and decorative embroidery patterns stored in the machine's memory (see the "QUICK REFERENCE GUIDE" for a full summary of patterns in the machine's memory). You can also use patterns from the embroidery cards (sold separately).

Once the machine has finished the initialization and the carriage has moved to the start position, the pattern type selection screen will display.

If another screen is displayed, press to display the screen below.



- 1) Embroidery patterns
- ② Heirloom patterns
- 3 Border patterns
- 4 Cross stitch patterns
- (5) Floral alphabet patterns
- 6 Alphabet character patterns
- ⑦ Frame patterns
- Patterns from an embroidery card (sold separately)
- Patterns saved in the machine's memory (see page 170)
- 10 Patterns saved in USB media (see page 170)
- (1) Patterns saved on the computer (see page 171)

■ Pattern Selection Screens

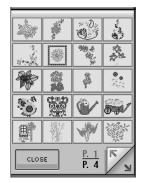
There are 7 categories of patterns in this machine. selection screen for that category.



indicates that there is more than one pattern



Embroidery patterns



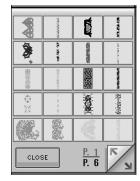


Heirloom patterns





Border patterns



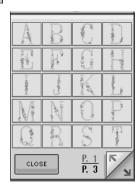


Cross stitch patterns



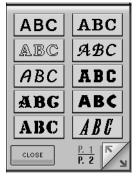


Floral alphabet patterns



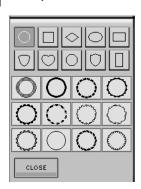


A A Alphabet characters



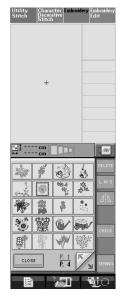


Frame patterns

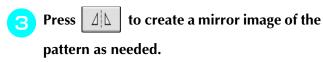


Selecting Embroidery Patterns/ Heirloom Patterns/Border Patterns/Cross stitch Patterns/ Floral alphabet Patterns

- Select the category of the pattern you want to embroider.
- Press the key of the pattern you want to embroider.
 - Press to view the next page.
 Press to view the previous page.



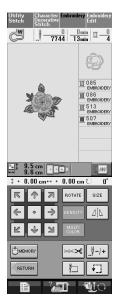
 \rightarrow The selected pattern is displayed.



* If you make a mistake selecting the pattern, press the key of the pattern you want to embroider.



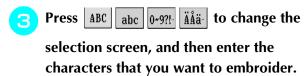
- 4 Press sewing.
 - → The sewing screen is displayed.
- 5 Proceed to see "VIEWING THE SEWING SCREEN" on page 136 to embroider the pattern.
 - * To return to the previous screen to select another pattern, press RETURN .



Selecting Alphabet Character Patterns

- Press AA.
- Press the key of the font you want to embroider.





- If you want to change the size of a character, select the character and then press LMS to change the size. The size changes each time you press the key, from large to medium to small.
- If you make a mistake, press DELETE to erase the
- If the pattern is too small to see clearly, you can use the снеск key to check it.







If you continue adding characters after changing the size, the new characters will be entered in the new size.

You cannot change the size of the entered characters after combining character stitch patterns.



Press SEWING



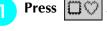


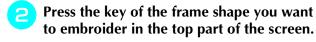
- → The sewing screen is displayed.
- Proceed to see "VIEWING THE SEWING SCREEN" on page 136 to embroider the pattern.
 - To return to the previous screen to select another pattern, press RETURN

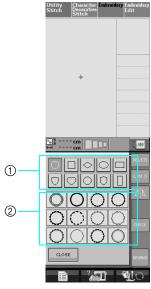


Selecting Frame Patterns



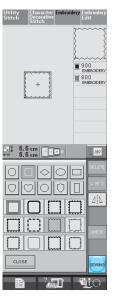




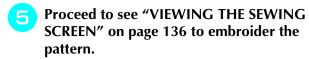


- ① Frame shapes
- ② Frame patterns
- → Various frame patterns are displayed at the bottom part of the screen.
- Press the key of the frame pattern you want to embroider.
 - If you make a mistake selecting the pattern, press the key of the pattern you want to embroider.
 - \rightarrow The selected pattern is displayed on the screen.





 \rightarrow The sewing screen is displayed.



* To return to the previous screen to select another pattern, press RETURN .



Selecting Patterns from Embroidery Cards

■ About Embroidery Cards (Sold Separately)

- Use only embroidery cards manufactured for this machine. Using unauthorized cards may cause your machine to operate incorrectly.
- Embroidery cards sold in foreign countries cannot be used with this machine.
- Store embroidery cards in the hard case.

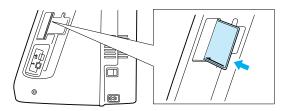


Note

- Only insert or remove the embroidery card when is displayed, or when the machine is turned off.
- Do not insert the card in a direction other than that shown by the arrow on the card, and do not force the card into the slot strongly. Do not put any object except for the embroidery cards into the slot. Otherwise, your machine may be damaged.

Insert the card completely into the slot on the right side of the machine.

* Insert the embroidery card so that the end with a printed arrow is facing the front.



Press .

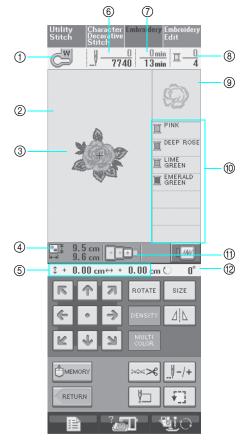


- The patterns on the embroidery card are displayed on the selection screen.
- Follow the steps on page 132 to select a pattern.

Selecting Patterns from USB media/Computer

To recall patterns from the computer or USB media, see pages 170 through 172.

VIEWING THE SEWING SCREEN

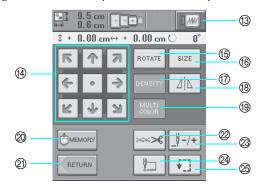


- ① Shows the presser foot code.

 Attach embroidery foot "W" for all embroidery projects. When the foot presser symbol is displayed on the screen, you are able to sew.
- ② Shows the boundary for embroidering with the extra large frame (30 cm \times 18 cm (approx. 12 inches \times 7 inches)).
- 3 Shows a preview of the selected pattern.
- (4) Shows the size of the selected pattern.
- ⑤ Shows how far the sewing position is from the center (when you move the sewing position).
- (6) Shows how many stitches are in the selected pattern and how many stitches have been sewn so far.
- Thouse the time necessary to sew the pattern, and the time already spent sewing the pattern (not including time for changing and automatically trimming the thread).
- ® Shows the number of colors in the selected pattern, and the number of the color currently being sewn.
- Shows the part of the embroidery that will be sewn with the first thread color.
- (10) Shows the order the colors are sewn in.
- (1) Shows the embroidery frames that can be used for the selected pattern. Be sure to use the proper frame (see page 139).
- Shows the degree of rotation of the pattern.
- * There is an explanation of each key's function on the next page.

■ Key Functions

Using these keys, you can change the size of the pattern, rotate the pattern, etc.



No.	Display	Key Name	Explanation	Page
13		Image key	Press this key for a preview of the sewn image.	145
14		Arrow keys (• Center key)	Press an arrow key to move the pattern in the direction shown by the arrow. (Press the Center key to return the pattern to the center of the embroidery area.)	159
15	ROTATE	Rotate key	Press this key to rotate the pattern. You can rotate a pattern one degree, 10 degrees or 90 degrees at a time.	161
16	SIZE	Size key	Press this key to change the size of the pattern.	160
177	DENSITY	Density key	Press this key to change the density of alphabet character or frame patterns.	162
18	4 7	Horizontal mirror image key	Press this key to create a horizontal mirror image of the pattern.	162
19	MULTI COLOR	Multi color key	Press this key to change the color of each letter when sewing alphabet character patterns.	163
20	MEMORY	Memory key	Saves a pattern in the machine's memory, USB media or a computer.	
21	RETURN	Return key	Press this key to return to the pattern type selection screen.	_
22	****	Cut/Tension key	Press this key to specify automatic thread cutting, thread trimming or the thread tension. For embroidery, these functions are set automatically.	154-155
23	/+	Forward/Back key	Press this key to move the needle forward or back in the pattern; useful if the thread breaks while sewing or if you want to start again from the beginning.	151-153
24	¥=	Starting point key	Press this key to move the needle start position to align the needle with the pattern position.	159
25	F]	Trial key	Press this key to check the position of the pattern. The embroidery frame moves to the desired position so you can check that there is enough space to sew the pattern.	144



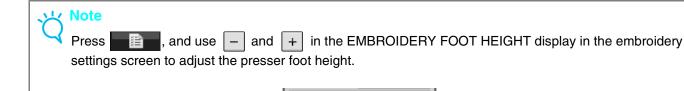
∠∠ Note

• Some operations or functions are not available for certain patterns. If the key display is light gray, you cannot use that function or operation with the selected pattern.

PREPARING THE FABRIC

A CAUTION

- Use fabrics with a thickness of less than 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch). Using fabrics thicker than 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch) may cause the needle to break.
- When using layers with thicker batting etc., you can sew more attractive embroidery by adjusting the embroidery presser foot height in the embroidery settings screen (see below).
- In the case of thick terry cloth towels we recommend that you place a piece of water soluble stabilizer on the top surface of the towel. This will help to reduce the nap of the toweling and result in more attractive embroidery.



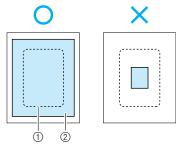
Attaching Iron-on Stabilizers (backing) to the Fabric

For best results in your embroidery projects, always use stabilizer material for embroidery. Follow the package instructions for the stabilizer being used.

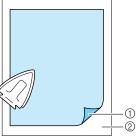
When using fabrics that cannot be ironed (such as towel or fabrics that have loops which expand when ironed) or in places where ironing is difficult, position the stabilizer material under the fabric without fusing it, then position the fabric and stabilizer in the embroidery frame, or check with your authorized dealer for the correct stabilizer to use.

A CAUTION

 Always use a stabilizer material for embroidery when sewing stretch fabrics, lightweight fabrics, fabrics with a coarse weave, or fabrics which cause pattern shrinkage. Otherwise, the needle may break and cause injury. Not using a stabilizer material may result in a poor finish to your project. Use a piece of stabilizer which is larger than the embroidery frame being used.



- 1) Size of the embroidery frame
- ② Iron-on stabilizer (backing)
- Iron the iron-on stabilizer material to the wrong side of the fabric.



- 1 Fusible side of stabilizer
- ② Fabric (wrong side)



Memo

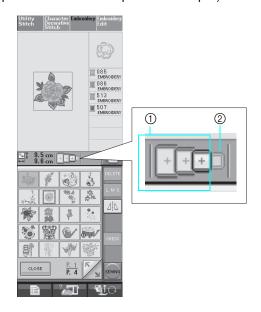
 When embroidering on thin fabrics such as organdy or lawn, or on napped fabrics such as towel or corduroy, use water soluble stabilizer (sold separately) for best results. The water soluble stabilizer material will dissolve completely in water, giving the project a more attractive finish.

Hooping the Fabric in the Embroidery Frame

■ Types of Embroidery Frames

Extra Large	Large	Medium	Small
Can embroider an area	Can embroider an area	Can embroider an area	Can embroider an area
30 cm × 18 cm	18 cm × 13 cm	10 cm × 10 cm	2 cm × 6 cm
(approx. 12 inches \times 7 inches)	(approx. 7 inches × 5 inches)	(approx. 4 inches \times 4 inches)	(approx. 1 inch × 2-1/2 inches)
Use when embroidering	Use when embroidering patterns	Use when embroidering patterns	Use for embroidering names or
connected or combined	between 10 cm × 10 cm (approx.	under 10 cm x 10 cm	very small patterns.
characters or patterns, or when	4 inches × 4 inches) and	(approx. 4 inches \times 4 inches).	
embroidering large patterns.	18 cm × 13 cm (approx. 7 inches		
	× 5 inches).		

Embroidery Frame 26 cm \times 16 cm (approx. 10-1/4 inches \times 6-1/4 inches) can be used. Select a frame that matches the pattern size. Frame options are displayed on the LCD.



- (1) Can be used
- ② Cannot be used

A CAUTION

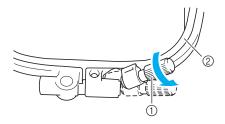
• If you use a frame that is too small, the presser foot may strike the frame during sewing and cause injury.

■ Inserting the Fabric



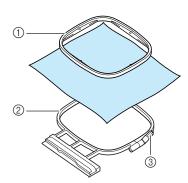
Note

- If the fabric is placed loose in the embroidery frame, the embroidery design will sew out poorly. Insert the fabric on a level surface, and gently stretch the fabric taut in the frame. Follow the steps below to insert the fabric correctly.
- Lift-up and loosen the frame adjustment screw and remove the inner frame.



- 1) Frame adjustment screw
- 2 Inner frame
- Lay the fabric right side up on top of the outer frame.

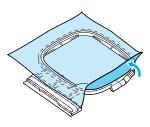
Re-insert the inner frame making sure to align the inner frame's \triangle with the outer frame's ∇ .



- ① Inner frame
- ② Outer frame
- ③ Frame adjustment screw



Slightly tighten the frame adjustment screw, and then remove the slack in the fabric by pulling on the edges and corners. Do not loosen the screw.



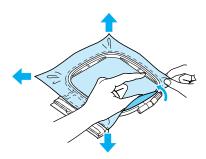


Memo

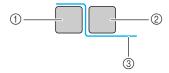
When using the extra large frame, tighten the adjustment screws at the top and bottom of the frame, so that the spaces at the top and bottom of the frame are equal.



- Gently stretch the fabric taut, and tighten the frame adjustment screw to keep the fabric from loosening after stretching.
 - * After stretching the fabric, make sure the fabric is taut.



* Make sure the inside and outside frames are even before you start embroidering.



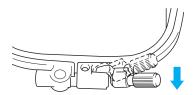
- ① Outer frame
- ② Inner frame
- ③ Fabric



Memo

Stretch the fabric from all four corners and all four edges. While stretching the fabric, tighten the frame adjustment screw.

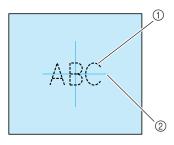
Return the frame adjustment screw to its initial position.



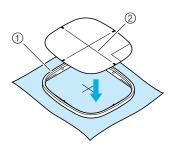
■ Using the Embroidery Sheet

When you want to embroider the pattern in a particular place, use the embroidery sheet with the frame.

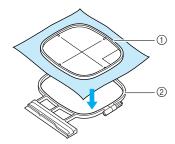
With a chalk pen, mark the area of the fabric you want to embroider.



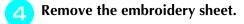
- 1 Embroidery pattern
- ② Mark
- Place the embroidery sheet on the inner frame. Align the guide lines on the embroidery sheet with the mark you made on the fabric.

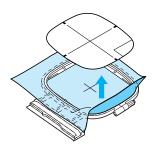


- 1) Inner frame
- ② Guide line
- Gently stretch the fabric so there are no folds or wrinkles, and press the inner frame into the outer frame.



- 1) Inner frame
- ② Outer frame



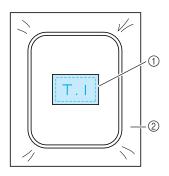


Embroidering Small Fabrics or Fabric Edges

Use an embroidery stabilizer to provide extra support. After embroidering, remove the stabilizer carefully. Attach the stabilizer as shown in the examples below. We recommend using a stabilizer for embroidery.

■ Embroidering Small Fabrics

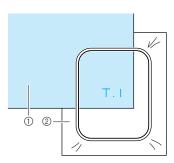
Use a temporary spray adhesive to adhere the small piece of fabric to the larger piece in the frame. If you do not wish to use a temporary spray adhesive, attach the stabilizer with a basting stitch.



- ① Fabric
- ② Stabilizer

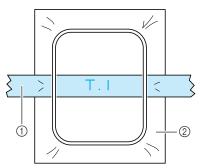
■ Embroidering Edges or Corners

Use a temporary spray adhesive to adhere the small piece of fabric to the larger piece in the frame. If you do not wish to use a temporary spray adhesive, attach the stabilizer with a basting stitch.



- ① Fabric
- ② Stabilizer

■ Embroidering Ribbons or Tape
Secure with double-sided tape or a temporary spray adhesive.



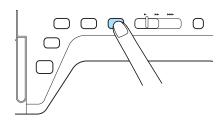
- ① Ribbon
- ② Stabilizer

ATTACHING THE EMBROIDERY FRAME

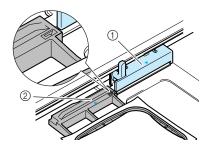


Wind and insert the bobbin before attaching the embroidery frame.

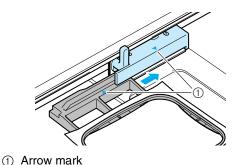
Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to raise the presser foot.



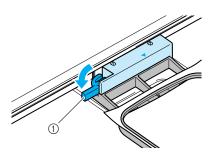
Align the embroidery frame guide with the right edge of the embroidery frame holder.



- ① Embroidery frame holder
- ② Embroidery frame guide
- Slide the embroidery frame into the holder, making sure to align the embroidery frame's \triangle with the holder's ∇ .



Lower the frame-securing lever to be level with the frame to secure the embroidery frame in the embroidery frame holder.



① Frame-securing lever

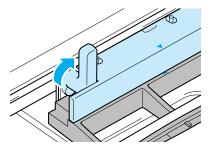


CAUTION

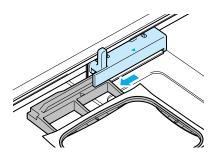
If the frame-securing lever is not lowered, the embroidery pattern may not sew out correctly or the presser foot may strike the embroidery frame and cause injury.



Raise the frame-securing lever.



Pull the embroidery frame toward you.



CONFIRMING THE PATTERN POSITION

The pattern is normally positioned in the center of the embroidery frame. You can check the layout before starting embroidery and change the position.

Checking the Pattern Position

The embroidery frame moves and shows the pattern position. Watch the frame closely to make sure the pattern will be sewn in the right place.



Press [F] .



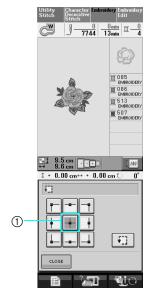
→ The following screen is displayed.



From 1

oxdot, press the key for the position

that you want to check.

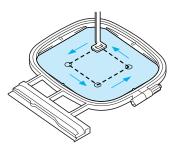


- Selected position
- → The needle will move to the selected position on the pattern.



To see the entire embroidering area, press

. The embroidery frame moves and shows the embroidery area.





CAUTION

Make sure the needle is up when the embroidery frame is moving. If the needle is down, it could break and result in injury.

Press

screen.

RETURN

to return to the original

Previewing the Completed Pattern





→ An image of the pattern as it will be embroidered appears.



- * Frames displayed in light gray cannot be selected.
- * Press to see a full screen preview.
- * The pattern can be sewn as it appears in the following display.



→ You can begin sewing from this screen by pressing the "Start/Stop" button.



SEWING AN EMBROIDERY PATTERN

Sewing Attractive Finishes

There are many factors that go into sewing beautiful embroidery. Using the appropriate stabilizer (see page 138) and hooping the fabric in the frame (see page 139) are two important factors mentioned earlier. Another important point is the appropriateness of the needle and thread being used. See the explanation of threads below.

Thread	 Use embroidery thread, or country embroidery thread intended for use with this machine. Other embroidery threads may not yield optimum results.
	Use embroidery bobbin thread intended for use with this machine. When using other kinds of embroidery bobbin thread, use the bobbin case (no marking) included with this machine (The bobbin case originally installed in the machine has a green screw). (See page 210 for how to remove the bobbin case.)



If you use threads other than those listed above, the embroidery may not sew out correctly.

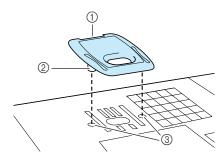


↓ Note

- Before embroidering, check that there is enough thread in the bobbin. If you continue sewing without enough thread in the bobbin, the thread may tangle.
- Do not leave objects in the range of motion of the embroidery frame. The frame may strike the object and cause a poor finish to the embroidery pattern.
- When embroidering on large garments (especially jackets or other heavy fabrics), do not let the fabric hang over the table. Otherwise, the embroidery unit cannot move freely, and the pattern may not turn out as planned.

■ Embroidery Needle Plate Cover

Under some conditions, based on the type of fabric, stabilizer, or thread being used, there may be some looping in the upper thread. In this case, attach the included embroidery needle plate cover to the needle plate. Attach the cover by inserting the two projections on the underside of the cover into the notches on the needle plate as shown below.



- Groove
- ② Projection
- ③ Notch

To remove the embroidery needle plate cover, place your fingernail in the groove and lift the plate out.



CAUTION

Push the embroidery needle plate cover as far as possible to attach it. If the embroidery needle plate cover is not securely attached, it may cause the needle to break.

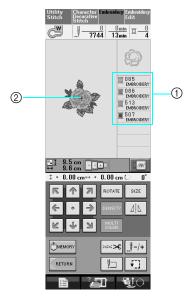


• Do not use the embroidery needle plate cover for any applications other than embroi-

Sewing Embroidery Patterns

Example:





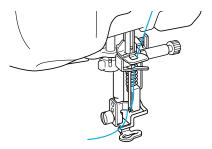
- Embroidery color order
- ② Cursor



Memo

The [+] cursor moves over the pattern, showing which part of the pattern is being sewn.

Thread the machine with the first color (see "Threading Using the "Automatic Threading" Button" on page 25).



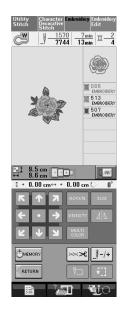
- Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to lower the presser foot, and press the "Start/ Stop" button to start embroidering.
 - → When the first color is completely sewn, the machine will automatically trim the threads and stop. The presser foot will then automatically be raised. On the embroidery color order display, the next color will move to the top.



Memo

If there is thread left over from the beginning of sewing, it may be sewn over as you continue embroidering the pattern, making it very difficult to deal with the thread after the pattern is finished. Trim the threads at the beginning.

- Remove the thread for the first color from the machine. Thread the machine with the next color.
- Repeat the same steps for embroidering the remaining colors.



→ When the last color is sewn, "Finish sewing" will appear on the display. Press (CLOSE), and the display will return to the original screen.



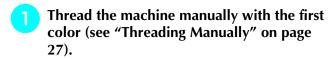
Memo

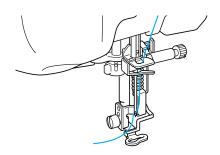
The Thread Trimming Function is originally set to trim excess thread jumps (threads linking parts of the pattern, etc.). When an end of upper thread may remain on the surface of the fabric at the beginning of the stitching, depending on the type of thread and fabric that are used. After embroidering is finished, cut off this excess thread.

*If the setting has been turned off, trim the excess thread jumps using scissors after the pattern is finished.

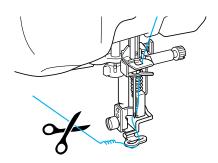
See page 155 for information on the thread trimming function.

■ When Threading Manually





- Lower the presser foot, then press the "Start/Stop" button to start embroidering. After 5-6 stitches, press the "Start/Stop" button again to stop the machine.
- Trim the excess thread at the end of the seam. If the end of the seam is under the presser foot, raise the presser foot, then trim the excess thread.





Memo

If there is thread left over from the beginning of sewing, it may be sewn over as you continue embroidering the pattern, making it very difficult to deal with the thread after the pattern is finished. Trim the threads at the beginning.

- Press the "Start/Stop" button again to restart the machine.
- Repeat steps 3 and 4 from the previous section.

Sewing Embroidery Patterns Which Use Appliqué

There are some patterns which call for an appliqué inside the pattern.

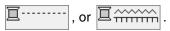
When sewing an embroidery pattern with an appliqué, the color sewing order display shows "Appliqué Material", "Appliqué Position", "Appliqué", and then the sewing order of the colors around the appliqué.



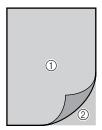
Memo

Depending on the thread color display setting,

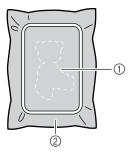
the display may show 🗵 -------



Attach an iron-on stabilizer to the wrong side of the appliqué material.



- ① Appliqué material (cotton, felt, etc.)
- ② Iron-on stabilizer
- Place the appliqué material into the embroidery frame, and then press the "Start/Stop" button to sew the outline of the appliqué.



- ① Outline of appliqué
- ② Appliqué material

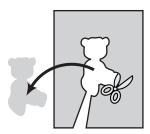


Memo

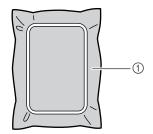
The embroidery procedure is the same as the basic procedure explained on pages 147 through 148.

→ The machine will sew around the outline of the appliqué pieces and will then stop.

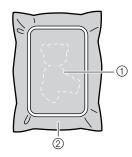
- Remove the appliqué material from the embroidery frame, and then cut carefully along the stitching. After cutting, remove all of the stitching thread carefully.
 - Carefully cut out the pattern on the outline you just sewed. Do not cut inside the stitching line, as the appliqué fabric will not be caught by the appliqué stitch.



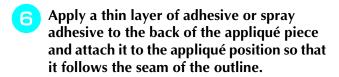
Place the base material into the embroidery



- Base material
- Press the "Start/Stop" button to sew the position of the appliqué.
 - Use the same thread color you plan to use when attaching the appliqué in step 7.



- 1 Position of appliqué
- ② Base material
- → The machine will sew around the position of the appliqué and will then stop.







If the appliqué material is a lightweight fabric, you may want to use a fusible web on the back to stabilize the fabric and for appliqué placement. Fuse appliqué in place with an iron. Do not remove fabric from the frame to iron the appliqué material.

Press the "Start/Stop" button.





Some patterns may not show all three appliqué steps. Sometimes the "Appliqué" step will be shown as a color.

- → The appliqué will then be completed.
- Change the upper thread and then carry out the rest of the embroidering.





- Some glue may get onto the presser foot, needle, and needle plate at this time. Finish embroidering the appliqué pattern and then clean away the glue.
- For best sewing results clip all threads between color steps.

ADJUSTMENTS DURING THE EMBROIDERY PROCESS



Note

• Be careful not to bump the embroidery unit carriage or the presser foot when removing or attaching the embroidery frame. Otherwise, the pattern will not embroider correctly.

If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread

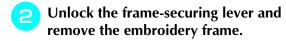
When the bobbin begins to run out of thread during embroidering, the machine will stop and the message below will appear. Press and follow the directions below to rethread the lower threading. If very little sewing remains, you can thread 10 final stitches without rethreading the machine by pressing close. The machine will stop after sewing the 10 stitches.



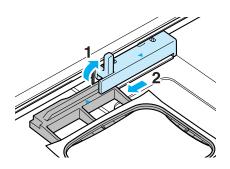
Press OK.



→ The carriage will move and the thread will be automatically cut.



* Be careful not to apply strong force to the fabric at this time. Otherwise, the fabric may loosen in the frame.



Insert a wound bobbin into the machine, then reattach the embroidery frame.



Press □oκ



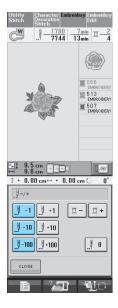
- → The carriage will return to its original position.
- To return to the spot in the pattern where you stopped sewing, follow steps through in the next section.

If the Thread Breaks During Sewing

- Press the "Start/Stop" button to stop the machine.
- If the upper thread is broken, redo the upper threading. If the bobbin thread is broken, press and follow the directions in steps 1 through 4 from the previous section to reset the bobbin.
- **3** Press [⅓-/+].



- Press [] -1, [] -10, or [] -100 to move the needle back the correct number of stitches before the spot where the thread broke.



- Press CLOSE to return to the original screen.
- Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to lower the presser foot, and press the "Start/ Stop" button to continue sewing.

Restarting from the Beginning





Press 📗 0.



- → The embroidery frame moves, returning the needle to the pattern's beginning position.
- Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to lower the presser foot and start sewing.

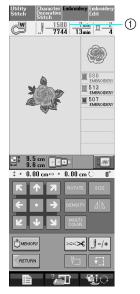
Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power

The current color and stitch number are saved when embroidery is stopped. The next time that the machine is turned on, you can choose whether or not to continue the stopped sewing operation.



Memo

Even if the power goes out in the middle of embroidery, the machine returns to the point where embroidery was stopped when the machine is turned on again.



 Current stitch number when embroidery was stopped



Note

 Do not remove the embroidery unit or the memory will no longer remember your design.



Turn the main power to ON.



Follow the instructions shown on the screen and remove the embroidery frame.

→ The following message will appear.



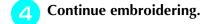


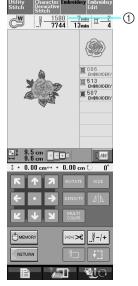
→ The previous sewing screen displayed before the machine was turned off appears.



Memo

If you want to start a new operation, press so the pattern selection screen appears.





① Stitch number when embroidery is resumed

MAKING EMBROIDERY ADJUSTMENTS

Adjusting Thread Tension

When embroidering, the thread tension should be set so that the upper thread can slightly be seen on the wrong side of the fabric.

■ Correct Thread Tension

The pattern can be seen from the wrong side of the fabric. If the thread tension is not set correctly, the pattern will not finish well. The fabric may pucker or the thread may break.





(Right side)

(Wrong side)

Follow the operations described below to adjust thread tension according to the situation.



∠ Note

 If the thread tension setting is made extremely weak, the machine may stop during sewing. This is not the sign of a malfunction. Increase the thread tension slightly, and begin sewing again.



Memo

- If you turn the main power to OFF or select a different pattern, the thread tension will reset to the automatic setting.
- When you retrieve a saved pattern, the thread tension setting will be the same as when the pattern was saved.

■ Upper Thread is Too Tight

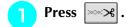
The tension of the upper thread is too tight, resulting in the bobbin thread being visible from the right side of the fabric.





(Right side)

(Wrong side)





Press — to weaken the upper thread tension. (The tension number will decrease.)



Press CLOSE

■ Upper Thread is Too Loose

The tension of the upper thread is too loose, resulting in a loose upper thread, loose thread locks, or loops appearing on the right side of the fabric.

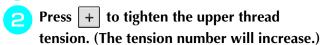




(Right side)

(Wrong side)







Using the Automatic Thread Cutting Function (END COLOR TRIM)

The automatic thread cutting function will cut the thread at the end of sewing each color. This function is initially turned on. To turn this function off, press key and then . This function can be turned on or off during embroidering.

* This setting returns to its default when the machine is turned off.





Press to turn off END COLOR TRIM.



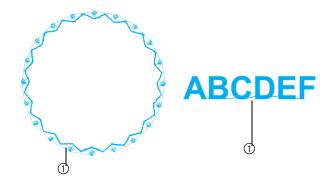
- → The key will display as
- * When one color thread is sewn, the machine will stop without cutting the thread.

Using the Thread Trimming Function (JUMP STITCH TRIM)

The thread trimming function will automatically trim any excess thread jumps within the color. This function is initially turned on. To turn this function off, press key and then

. This function can be turned on or off during embroidering.

* Your customized setting remains after turning off and on the machine.



Jump stitch



Note

 When this function is turned on, use the enclosed ball point needle 75/107 for embroidering patterns with short jump stitches such as alphabet characters. Using other needled may cause a thread breaking.



Press







Press to turn off JUMP STITCH TRIM.



- → The key will display as
- * The machine will not trim the thread before moving to the next stitching.

■ Selecting the length of JUMP STITCH not to trim

When the thread trimming function is turned on, you can select the length of the jump stitch not to trim the thread. This function can be turned on or off during embroidering. Select a setting from 5 mm to 50 mm in 5 mm increments.

 Your customized setting remains after turning off and on the machine.

Press + or - to select the length of JUMP STITCH.

For example: Press + to select 25mm (1 inch) and the machine will not trim 25mm or less length of jump stitch before moving to the next stitching.



Ö

Note

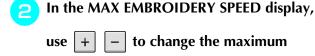
- If design has many trims it is recommended to select a higher jump stitch trim setting in order to reduce the amount of excess tails on backside of fabric.
- The higher number of the jump stitch length selected, the fewer number of times the machine will trim. In this case, more jump stitches remain on the surface of the fabric.

Adjusting the Embroidery Speed



embroidery speed.

and Embroidery.



* You can choose from 3 different speed levels.





Memo

- SPM is the number of stitches sewn in one minute.
- Decrease the sewing speed when embroidering on thin, thick, or heavy fabrics.
- The sewing speed can be changed while embroidery is being sewn.
- The maximum sewing speed setting does not change until a new setting is selected.
 The setting specified before the main power is set to OFF remains selected the next time that the machine is turned on.
- Decrease the sewing speed to 600 spm when using a speciality thread like a metallic thread.



Press CLOSE

Changing the Thread Color Display

You can display the name of the thread colors, the time or embroidery thread number.



Memo

Colors on the screen may vary slightly from actual spool colors.

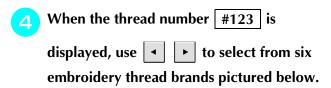




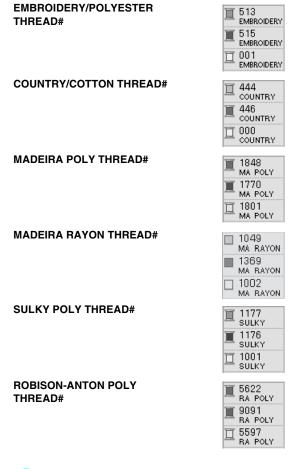
3 In the THREAD COLOR DISPLAY, use

to display the name of the thread colors, the time or the embroidery thread number.









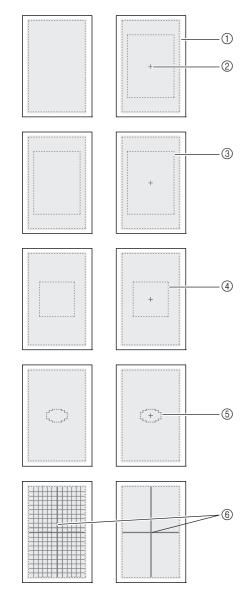
Press

CLOSE

Changing the Embroidery Frame Display

- Press .
- Press Embroidery
- In the FRAME DISPLAY, use to change the embroidery frame display mode.
 - * There are 10 choices.





- ① Extra large frame embroidering area
- ② Center line
- ③ Large frame embroidering area
- ④ Medium frame embroidering area
- ⑤ Small frame embroidering area
- 6 Grid lines



REVISING THE PATTERN

A CAUTION

• When you have revised the pattern, check the display of available embroidery frames and use an appropriate frame. If you use an embroidery frame not displayed as available for use, the presser foot may strike the frame and possibly cause injury.

Changing the Pattern Position

Use to move the pattern in the direction shown by the arrow.

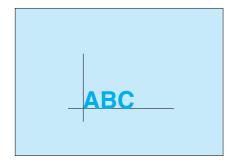
Press • to center the pattern.



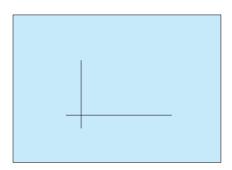
① Distance from the center

Aligning the Pattern and the Needle

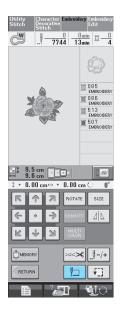
Example: Aligning the lower left side of a pattern and the needle



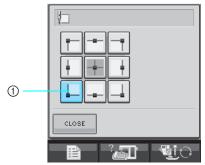
Mark the embroidery start position on the fabric, as shown.



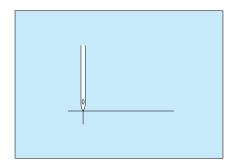
Press 📙 .







- 1 Start position
- → The needle position moves to the bottom left corner of the pattern (the embroidery frame moves so that the needle is positioned correctly).
- Press CLOSE.
- Use to align the needle and the mark on the fabric, and begin embroidering the pattern.



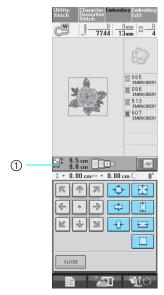
Changing the Size

Press SIZE.

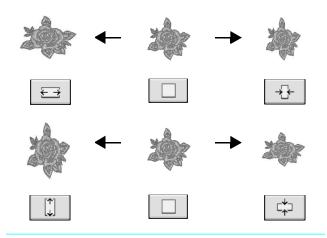


Select the direction in which to change the size.

- * Press to enlarge the pattern.
- * Press to shrink the pattern.
- * Press 😝 to stretch the pattern horizontally.
- * Press to compact the pattern horizontally.
- * Press to stretch the pattern vertically.
- * Press to compact the pattern vertically.
- * Press ____ to return the pattern to its original appearance.



① Size of the pattern





Memo

- Some patterns or characters can be enlarged more than others.
- Some patterns or characters can be enlarged to a greater degree if they are rotated 90 degrees.
- Press to return to the original screen.

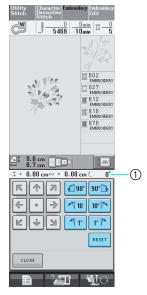
Rotating the Pattern



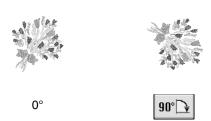


2 Select the angle of rotation for the pattern.

- * Press 90° to rotate the pattern 90 degrees to the left.
- * Press 90° to rotate the pattern 90 degrees to the right.
- * Press 10° to rotate the pattern 10 degrees to the left.
- * Press 10° \(\) to rotate the pattern 10 degrees to the right.
- * Press 10 to rotate the pattern 1 degree to the left.
- * Press 1° to rotate the pattern 1 degree to the right.
- * Press RESET to return the pattern to its original position.



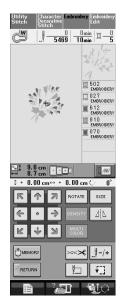
① Degree of rotation



Press to return to the original screen.

Creating a Horizontal Mirror Image

Press | 1 | so it appears as | 1 | to create a horizontal mirror image of the selected pattern. Press 4 again to return the pattern to normal.











Changing the Density (Alphabet Character and Frame Patterns Only)

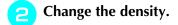
The thread density for some alphabet character and frame patterns can be changed.

A setting between 80% and 120% in 5% increments can be specified.



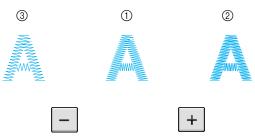






- * Press to make the pattern less dense.
- * Press + to make the pattern more dense.

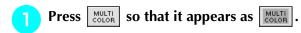




- ① Normal
- ② Fine (stitches closer together)
- 3 Coarse (stitches farther apart)
- → The pattern density changes each time you press a button.
- Press to return to the pattern selection screen.

Changing the Colors of Alphabet Character Patterns

Combined alphabet character patterns can be sewn with each letter in a different color. If "MULTI COLOR" is set, the machine stops after each character is sewn so that the thread can be changed to a different color.



Press the key again to return to the original setting.



After a character is sewn, change the thread color, and then sew the next character.



USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION

Embroidery Data Precautions

Observe the following precautions when using embroidery data other than that created and saved in this machine.

CAUTION

• When using embroidery data other than our original patterns, the thread or needle may break when sewing with a stitch density that is too fine or when sewing three or more overlapping stitches. In that case, use one of our original data design systems to edit the embroidery data.

■ Types of Embroidery Data that can be Used

• Only .pes,.pha,.phb,.phc, and .dst embroidery data files can be used with this machine. Using data other than that saved using our data design systems or sewing machines may cause the embroidery machine to malfunction.

■ Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used

Stitch data can be saved to or recalled from USB media. Use media that meets the following specifications.

- USB Floppy disk drive
- USB Flash drive (USB Flash memory).

Stitch data can be recalled only.

• USB CD-ROM, CD-R, CD-RW drives

You can also use the following types of USB media with the USB Memory Card Reader/Writer.

- Secure Digital (SD) Card
- CompactFlash
- Memory Stick
- Smart Media
- Multi Media Card (MMC)
- XD-Picture Card



Note

- Some USB media may not be usable with this machine. Please visit our website for more details.
- USB hubs cannot be used with this machine. The machine will not recognize the above USB devices or USB memory cards through a USB hub.
- The access lamp will begin blinking after inserting USB Devices/Media, and it will take about 5 to 6 seconds to recognize the Devices/Media. (Time will differ depending on the USB Device/Media).

When a file folder is necessary to create, use a computer.

■ Computers and Operating Systems with the Following Specifications can be Used

Compatible models:

IBM PC with a USB port as standard equipment IBM PC-compatible computer equipped with a USB port as standard equipment

Compatible operating systems:

Microsoft Windows 98SE/Me/2000/XP/Windows Vista/7

(Windows 98SE requires a driver. Download the driver from our Web site (www.brother.com). In addition, only Windows 98 Second Edition can use the driver.).

■ Precautions on Using the Computer to Create and Save Data

- If the file name of embroidery data cannot be identified, for example, because the name contains special characters, the file is not displayed. If this occurs, change the name of the file.
- If embroidery date larger than 300 mm (H) \times 180 mm (W) (approx.12 inches (H) \times 7 inches (W)) is selected, a message is shown asking if you wish to rotate the pattern 90 degrees. Even after being rotated 90 degrees, embroidery data larger than 300 mm (H) × 180 mm (W) (approx. 12 inches (H) \times 7 inches (W)) cannot be used. (All designs must be within the 300 mm (H) \times 180 mm (W) (approx. 12 inches (H) \times 7 inches (W)) design field size.)
- .pes files saved with the number of stitches or the number of colors exceeding the specified limits cannot be displayed. Use one of our original data design systems to edit the embroidery pattern so that it meets the specifications.
- Even if the embroidery unit is not attached, the machine will manage embroidery data.

■ Tajima (.dst) Embroidery Data

- .dst data is displayed in the pattern list screen by file name (the actual image cannot be displayed). Only the first eight characters of the file name can be displayed.
- Since Tajima (.dst) data does not contain specific thread color information, it is displayed with our default thread color sequence. Check the preview and change the thread colors as desired.

■ Trademarks

- Secure Digital (SD) Card is a registered trademark or a trademark of SD Card Association.
- CompactFlash is a registered trademark or a trademark of Sandisk Corporation.
- Memory Stick is a registered trademark or a trademark of Sony Corporation.
- Smart Media is a registered trademark or a trademark of Toshiba Corporation.
- Multi Media Card (MMC) is a registered trademark or a trademark of Infineon Technologies AG.
- xD-Picture Card is a registered trademark or a trademark of Fuji Photo Film Co. Ltd.
- IBM is a registered trademark or a trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.
- Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Each company whose software title is mentioned in this manual has a Software License Agreement specific to its proprietary programs.

All other brands and product names mentioned in this manual are registered trademarks of their respective companies. However, the explanations for markings such as [®] and TM are not clearly described within the text.

Saving Embroidery Patterns in the Machine's Memory

You can save embroidery patterns that you have customized and will use often; for example, your name or other combined patterns, patterns that have been rotated or had the size changed, patterns that have had the sewing position changed, etc.



Note

 Do not turn the main power to OFF while the "Saving" screen is displayed. You will lose the pattern you are saving.



Memo

- It takes a few seconds to save a pattern to the machine's memory.
- See page 170 for information on retrieving a saved pattern.



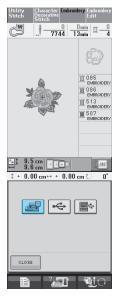
Press when the pattern you want to

save is in the sewing screen.





Press to return to the original screen without saving.



→ The "Saving" screen is displayed. When the pattern is saved, the display returns to the original screen automatically.

■ If the Memory is Full

If the screen below displays, either the maximum number of patterns have been saved or the pattern you want to save takes a lot of memory, and the machine cannot save it. If you delete a previously saved pattern, you can save the current pattern.



* Press to return to the original screen without saving.

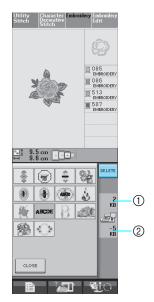


→ The machine displays the patterns currently saved.

Select the pattern you want to delete.



Press DELETE

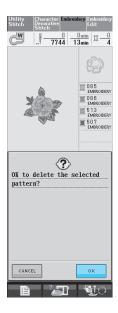


- ① Amount of memory used by the pattern to be deleted
- ② Amount of memory needed to save the current pattern



If you decide not to delete the pattern, press





→ The "Saving" screen displays. When the pattern is saved, the display returns to the original screen automatically.



Note

Do not turn the main power to OFF while the "Saving" screen is displayed. You will lose the pattern you are saving.



Memo

- If there is enough memory available after deleting the pattern, the pattern you want to save will be saved automatically. If there is not enough memory available after deleting the pattern, repeat the steps above to delete another pattern from the machine's memory.
- It takes a few seconds to save a pattern.
- See page 170 for more information about retrieving saved patterns.

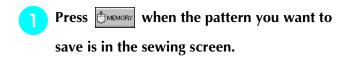
Saving Embroidery Patterns to USB Media (Commercially Available)

When sending embroidery patterns from the machine to USB media, plug the USB media into the machine's USB port. Depending on the type of USB media being used, either directly plug the USB device into the machine's USB port or plug the USB Card Writer/Reader into the machine's USB port.



Memo

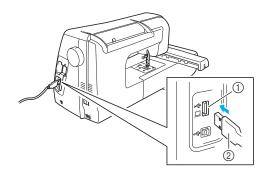
Some USB media may not be usable with this machine. Please visit our web site for more details.







Insert the USB media into the USB port connector on the machine.



- ① USB port connector for media
- ② USB media

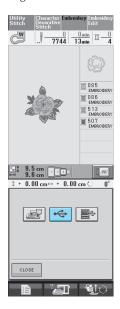


Memo

- The USB media can be inserted or removed at any time.
- Do not insert anything other than USB media into the USB media port connector. Otherwise, the USB media drive may be damaged.



* Press to return to the original screen without saving.



→ The "Saving" screen is displayed. When the pattern is saved, the display returns to the original screen automatically.

Saving Embroidery Patterns in the Computer

Using the included USB cable, the machine can be connected to your computer, and the embroidery patterns can be temporarily retrieved from and saved in your computer.

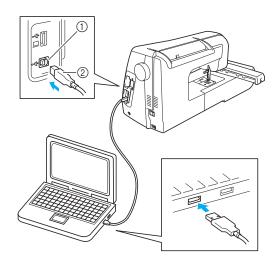


Do not turn the main power to OFF while the "Saving" screen is displayed. You will lose the pattern you are saving.



Plug the USB cable connector into the corresponding USB port connectors for the computer and for the machine.

The USB cable can be plugged into the USB port connectors on the computer and embroidery machine whether or not they are turned on.

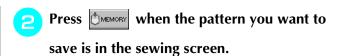


- 1) USB port connector for computer
- ② USB cable connector
- → The "Removable Disk" icon will appear in "My Computer" on the computer.



Note

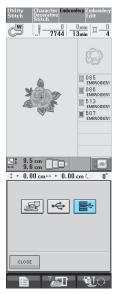
- The connectors on the USB cable can only be inserted into a connector in one direction. If it is difficult to insert the connector, do not insert it with force. Check the orientation of the connector.
- For details on the position of the USB port on the computer (or USB hub), refer to the instruction manual for the corresponding equipment.



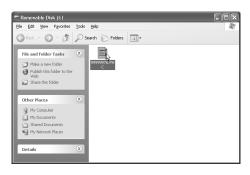




Press to return to the original screen without saving.



- → The pattern will be temporarily saved to "Removable Disk" under "My Computer".
- Select the pattern's .phc file in "Removable Disk" and copy the file to the computer.



Retrieving Patterns from the Machine's Memory



Press |



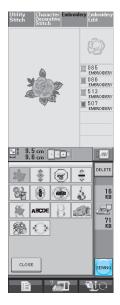
- → The machine displays the patterns currently in the memory.
- Press the key of the pattern you want to retrieve.
 - to return to the original screen. Press





Press SEWING





→ The sewing screen is displayed.

Recalling from USB Media

You can recall a specific embroider pattern from either directly USB media or a folder in the USB media. If the pattern is under the folder, move down layers of folders following a path to it.

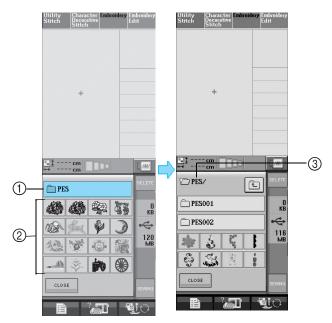
Insert the USB media into the USB port connector on the machine (see page 168).



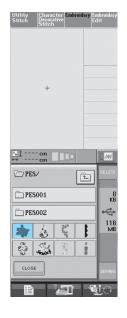


→ Embroidery patterns and a folder in a top folder are displayed.

- Press 🗀 when there is a subfolder to sort two or more stitch patterns to USB media, the embroidery pattern in the subfolder is displayed.
 - Press to return to the original screen without recalling.



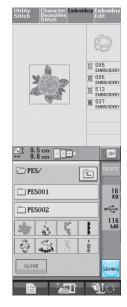
- Folder name
- ② Embroidery patterns in a top folder
- ③ Path
- → The path to shows the current folder at the top of the Embroidery patterns and folders in a subfolder are displayed.
- to return to the previous folder. Press
- Press the key of the pattern you want to retrieve.
 - Press CLOSE to return to the original screen.





Press SEWING

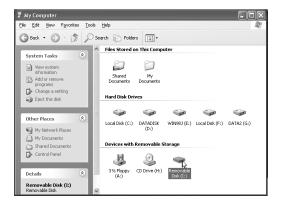




→ The sewing screen is displayed.

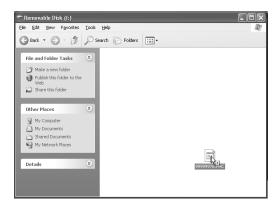
Recalling from the Computer

- Plug the USB cable connector into the corresponding USB port connectors for the computer and for the machine (see page 169).
- On the computer, open "My Computer" then go to "Removable Disk".





Move/copy the pattern data to "Removable



→ Pattern data in "Removable Disk" is written to the machine.



∠∠ Note

- While data is being written, do not disconnect the USB cable.
- Do not create folders within "Removable Disk". Since folders are not displayed, stitch pattern data within folders cannot be recalled.

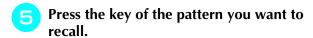


Press F

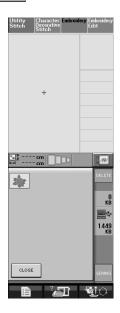




→ The patterns in the computer are displayed on the selection screen.



to return to the original screen. Press CLOSE



Press



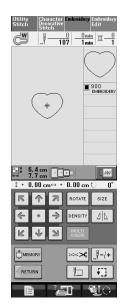
→ The sewing screen is displayed.

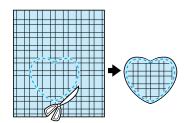
EMBROIDERY APPLICATIONS

Using a Frame Pattern to Make an Appliqué (1)

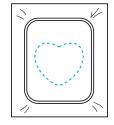
You can use framed patterns of the same size and shape to create an appliqué. Embroider one pattern with a straight stitch and one pattern with a satin stitch.

Select a straight stitch frame pattern.
Embroider the pattern onto the appliqué
material, then cut neatly around the outside
of the shape.

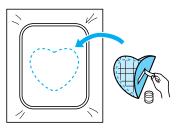




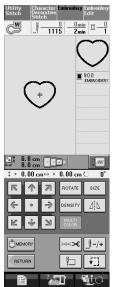
Embroider the same pattern from step onto the base fabric.

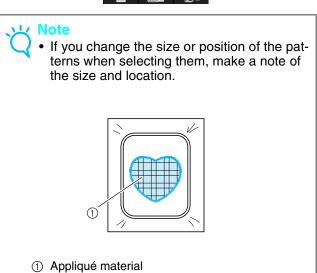


Apply a thin layer of fabric glue or a temporary spray adhesive to the rear of the appliqué created in step 1. Attach the appliqué to the base fabric matching the shapes.



Select the satin stitch frame pattern of the same shape as the appliqué. Embroider over the appliqué and base fabric from step 3 to create the appliqué.

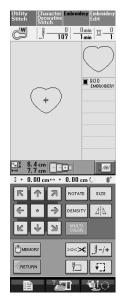




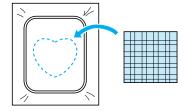
Using a Frame Pattern to Make an Appliqué (2)

This is a second method to make appliqué using embroidery patterns. You do not have to change the fabric in the embroidery frame using this method. Embroider one pattern with a straight stitch and one pattern with a satin stitch.

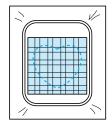
Select a straight stitch frame pattern, and embroider the pattern onto the base fabric.



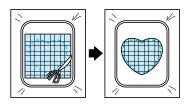
- Place the appliqué fabric over the pattern embroidered in step 1.
 - * Be sure that the appliqué fabric completely covers the seam.



3 Embroider the same pattern on the appliqué fabric.



Remove the embroidery frame from the embroidery unit, and cut around the outside of the stitches.





Note

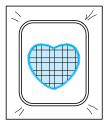
- Do not remove the fabric from the embroidery frame to cut it. Also, do not pull strongly on the fabric. Otherwise, the fabric may loosen in the frame.
- Select the satin stitch frame pattern of the same shape as the appliqué.





∠ Note

- Do not change the size or position of the pattern.
- Reattach the embroidery frame to the embroidery unit, and embroider the satin stitch pattern to create an appliqué.





Chapter 6 Embroidery Edit

EXPLANATION OF FUNCTIONS176
SELECTING PATTERNS TO EDIT
Selecting Embroidery Patterns/Heirloom Patterns/Border Patterns/
Cross stitch Patterns/Floral Alphabet Patterns/Frame Patterns178
Selecting Alphabet Character Patterns178
EDITING PATTERNS181
■ Key Functions182
Moving the Pattern183
Rotating the Pattern183
Changing the Size of the Pattern184
Deleting the Pattern185
Changing the Configuration of Alphabet Character Patterns185
Changing Alphabet Character Spacing185
Changing the Color of Each Alphabet Character in a Pattern186
Changing the Thread Color187
Creating a Custom Thread Table188
■ Adding a Color to the Custom Thread Table from the List189
Choosing a Color from the Custom Thread Table189
Designing Repeated Patterns190
■ Sewing Repeated Patterns190
■ Repeating One Element of a Repeated Pattern192
■ Assigning Thread Marks193
After Editing194
COMBINING PATTERNS195
Editing Combined Patterns195
Sewing Combined Patterns197
USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION198

EXPLANATION OF FUNCTIONS

With the Embroidery Edit functions, you can combine embroidery patterns and character patterns, change the size of patterns, rotate patterns, and perform many other editing functions. This machine can perform the 9 functions listed below.

■ Combine Patterns

You can easily create combinations of embroidery patterns, frame patterns, character patterns, patterns from the machine's memory, patterns from separately sold embroidery cards, and many other patterns.

■ Move Patterns

Within the $30 \text{ cm} \times 18 \text{ cm}$ (approx. $12 \text{ inches} \times 7 \text{ inches}$) wide embroidery area, you can change the position of patterns, and check the position on the LCD.

■ Rotate Patterns

You can rotate patterns one degree, ten degrees or ninety degrees at a time.

■ Enlarge or Reduce Patterns

You can make patterns larger or smaller.

• This function is not available for some patterns.

■ Create Mirror Images

You can create horizontal mirror images.

This function is not available for some patterns.

■ Change Alphabet Character Spacing

You can increase or decrease the spacing between characters in combined patterns.

■ Change Alphabet Character Appearance/Layout

You can change the layout of the characters to a curved line, diagonal, etc. There are 6 choices total.

■ Change the Thread Colors of Patterns

You can change the thread colors of the pattern to your favorite colors.

■ Creating a Repeating Pattern

You can add copies of a pattern to create a pattern that repeats in a vertical or horizontal direction.

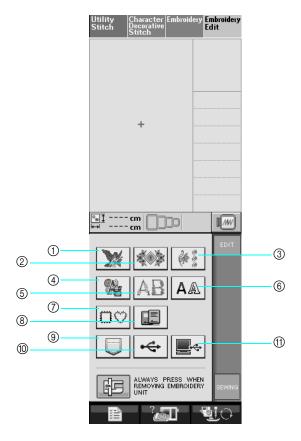






SELECTING PATTERNS TO EDIT

Prepare the machine for embroidery according to the instructions on page 126, and press display the screen below.



- Embroidery patterns
- ② Heirloom patterns
- 3 Border patterns
- 4 Cross stitch patterns
- ⑤ Floral alphabet patterns
- ⑥ Alphabet character patterns
- ⑦ Frame patterns
- Patterns from an embroidery card (sold separately)
- Patterns saved in the machine's memory (see page 170)
- n Patterns saved in USB media (see page 170)
- (1) Patterns saved on the computer (see page 171)



Memo

See page 131 for more information on each category's selection screen.



Note

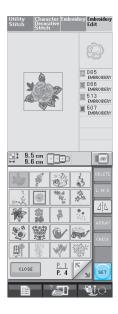
You can also sew Utility Stitches or Character/Decorative Stitches with the embroidery unit attached by pressing Utility or Character (a confirmation message for moving the carriage will appear). Raise the feed dogs, and then attach the appropriate presser foot before sewing.

Selecting Embroidery Patterns/ Heirloom Patterns/Border Patterns/Cross stitch Patterns/ Floral Alphabet Patterns/Frame Patterns

- Select the category of the pattern.
- - Press the key of the pattern you want to
 - See pages 132 and 134 for more information on selecting patterns.
 - → The pattern is displayed in the top part of the screen.

Press

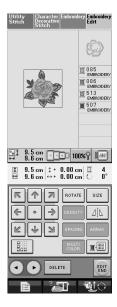




→ The pattern selected for editing is outlined in red on the embroidery edit display.



Proceed to see "EDITING PATTERNS" on page 181 to edit the pattern.



Selecting Alphabet Character Patterns

When you select character patterns from the embroidery edit screen, you can edit the appearance of the pattern at the same time.



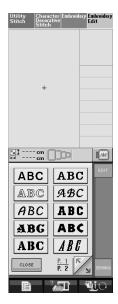


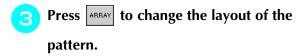




Select the font, then enter the characters. (Example: A B C D)

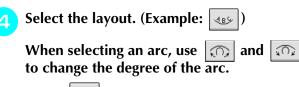
* See page 133 for more information about selecting characters.





* If the characters are too small to see, press view a display of all entered characters.





- * Press to make the arc flatter.
- * Press on to make the arc rounder.



Memo

When selecting , and and change to and and . You can increase or decrease the incline.



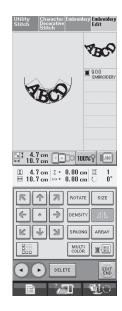


- Press CLOSE to return to the original screen.
- 6 After you finish your selections, press

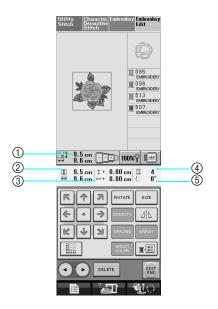


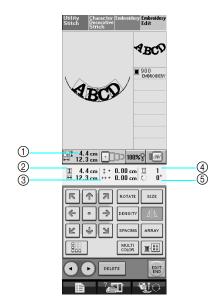


- ightarrow The embroidery edit screen will appear.
- Proceed to see "EDITING PATTERNS" on page 181 to edit the pattern.



EDITING PATTERNS





- ① Shows the size of the entire combined pattern.
- ② Shows the size of the pattern currently selected.
- ③ Shows the distance from the center of the frame.
- ④ Shows the color currently selected, and the number of colors in the pattern.
- ⑤ Shows the degree of rotation for the pattern.

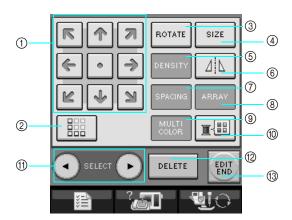


Memo

If a key display is light gray, you cannot use that function with the selected pattern.



■ Key Functions

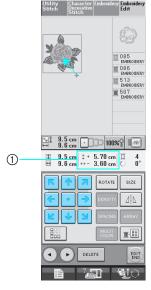


No.	Display	Key Name	Explanation	Page
1		Arrow keys (• Center key)	Press these keys to move the pattern in the direction indicated by the arrow on the key. (Press • to return the pattern to its original position.)	183
2		Border key	Press this key to make a repeating pattern.	190
3	ROTATE	Rotate key	Press this key to rotate the pattern. You can rotate a pattern one degree, ten degrees or ninety degrees at a time.	183
4	SIZE	Size key	Press this key to change the size of the pattern. Patterns can be enlarged or reduced.	184
(5)	DENSITY	Density key	Press this key to change the density of frame patterns or character patterns.	162
6	4 2	Horizontal mirror image key	Press this key to make a horizontal mirror image of the selected pattern.	162
7	SPACING	Character spacing key	Press this key to change the spacing of character patterns.	185
8	ARRAY	Array key	Press this key to change the configuration of a character pattern.	185
9	MULTI COLOR	Multi color key	Press this key to change the color of individual characters in a pattern.	186
10	□⟨믧	Thread palette key	Press this key to change the colors of the displayed pattern.	187
11)	SELECT •	Pattern select key	When a combined pattern is selected, use these keys to select a part of the pattern to edit.	_
12	DELETE	Delete key	Press this key to delete the selected pattern (the pattern outlined by the red box).	185
13	EDIT	Edit end key	Press this key to continue to the next step.	194

Moving the Pattern

to move the pattern in the direction shown on the key.

Press • to return the pattern to the center.



① Distance from the center

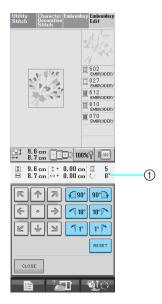
Rotating the Pattern





Select the angle by which the pattern is rotated.

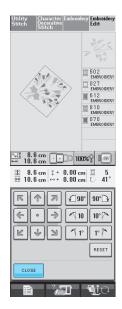
- Press 90° to rotate the pattern 90 degrees to the left.
- Press 90° to rotate the pattern 90 degrees to the right.
- ★ 10° to rotate the pattern 10 degrees to the Press left.
- Press 10° 🏹 🛰 to rotate the pattern 10 degrees to the right.
- to rotate the pattern 1 degree to the Press left.
- 1° |* to rotate the pattern 1 degree to the Press right.
- Press RESET to return the pattern to its original position.



① Degree of the pattern's rotation



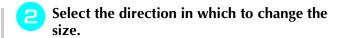




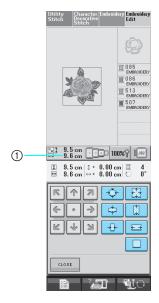
Changing the Size of the Pattern



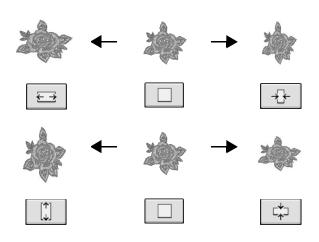




- * Press to enlarge the pattern.
- * Press to shrink the pattern.
- * Press 😝 to stretch the pattern horizontally.
- * Press | + to compact the pattern horizontally.
- * Press to stretch the pattern vertically.
- * Press to compact the pattern vertically.
- * Press ____ to return the pattern to its original appearance.



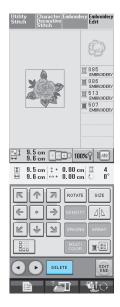
① Shows the size of the pattern being edited.



Press to return to the original screen.

Deleting the Pattern

Press DELETE to delete the pattern from the screen.



Changing the Configuration of Alphabet Character Patterns





Press the key of the layout you want to embroider.

* See page 179 for more information about layout types.

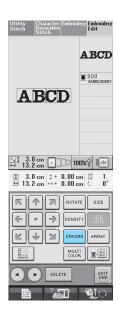


→ The display will show the selected layout.



Changing Alphabet Character Spacing







- * Press (ABS) to widen the character spacing.
- * Press + to tighten the character spacing.
- * Press to return the pattern to its original appearance.



$A B C D \leftrightarrow ABCD$

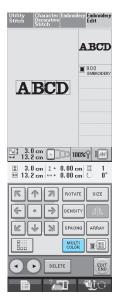




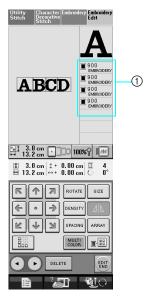
Press to return to the original screen.

Changing the Color of Each Alphabet Character in a Pattern

Press MULTI so you can assign a thread color to each character.



- Change the thread to sew each character in a different color.
 - * Press to change the colors in the sewing order (see page 187).



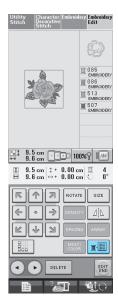
① Color for each character

Changing the Thread Color

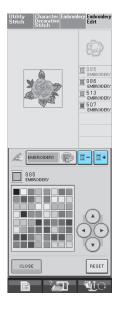
You can change the thread color by moving the color to be changed to the top of the sewing order and selecting a new color from the thread colors in the machine.



Press



- → The thread color palette screen displays.
- Press + or to put the color you want to change at the top of the sewing order.





Press (A)



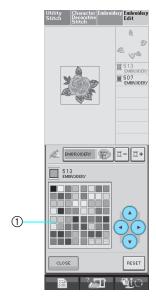




(v) to choose a new

color from the color palette.

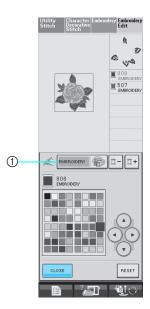
- To return to the original color, press | RESET |. If multiple colors have been changed, this command will return all colors to their original colors.
- You can select colors from the color palette by directly touching the screen with the touch pen.



- Color palette
- The selected color appears at the top of the sewing order.



Press CLOSE



- ① Color palette/Custom thread table change key
- → The display shows the changed colors.



Memo

To select a color from the Custom Thread Table, see "Choosing a Color from the Custom Thread Table" on page 189.



Creating a Custom Thread Table

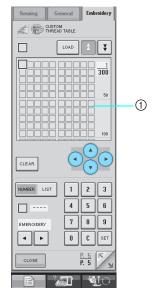
You can create a custom thread table containing the thread colors that you most often use. You can select thread colors from the machine's extensive list of thread colors from five different thread brands. You can select any color and move the color to your custom thread table.



Note

Some machines may already have an additional 300 Robison-Anton thread colors contained in the custom thread table.

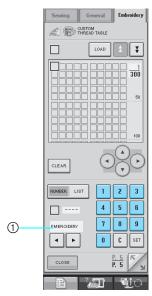
- Press to display P. 5.
- Use (A) (B) (T) to select where to add a color on the custom thread table.
 - * You can also touch the palette directly with the touch pen.
 - * You can scroll through 100 colors at a time using and von the custom thread table.



Custom thread table

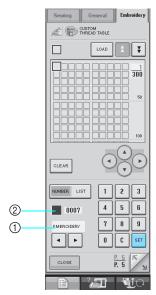
- Use to select one of the thread brands in the machine.
- 4. Use 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8

 9 0 to enter a color's 4-digit number.
 - * If you make a mistake, press **c** to erase the entered number, and then enter the correct number.



1 Thread brand





- ① Thread brand
- ② Entered number
- → The selected thread color is set in the custom thread table.



Note

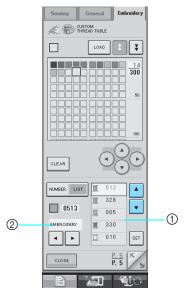
If set is not pressed, the thread color number will not be changed.

- Repeat the previous steps until all desired thread colors are specified.
 - * To delete a specified color from the palette, press
- **Press** to return to the original screen.



■ Adding a Color to the Custom Thread Table from the List

- Repeat the previous steps 1 through 3.
- Press NUMBER LIST to display the thread list.
- to select a thread color.



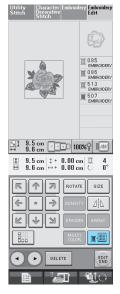
- 1 Thread list
- ② Thread brand

- Press SET.
- Repeat the previous steps until all desired thread colors are specified.
 - * To delete a specified color from the palette, press

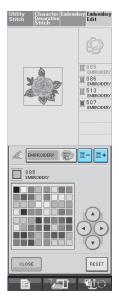
Choosing a Color from the Custom Thread Table

You can select a color from the up to 300 thread colors you have set in the custom thread table.





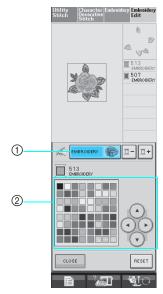
- → The thread color palette screen displays.
- Press $\Box + \Box \Box = \Box$ to put the color you want to change at the top of the sewing order.







Press EMBROIDERY B



- Color palette/Custom thread change key
- ② Color palette
- → The custom thread table will appear.



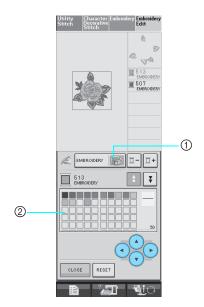






color from the custom thread table.

- and | T | to scroll through the custom thread table.
- Press RESET to return to the original color.
- You can select colors from the custom thread table by directly touching the screen with the touch pen.



- ① Custom thread
- ② Custom thread table
- → The display shows the changed colors.



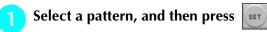
Press



Designing Repeated Patterns

■ Sewing Repeated Patterns

Using the border function, you can create stitches using repeated patterns. You can also adjust the spacing of the patterns within a repeated pattern stitch.



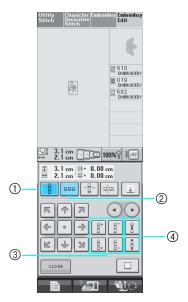




Press | !!!



Select the direction in which the pattern will be repeated.



- 1 Vertical direction
- ② Horizontal direction
- ③ Repeating and deleting keys
- ④ Spacing keys
- → The pattern direction indicator will change depending on the direction selected.
- Use | | to repeat the pattern on top and
 - to repeat the pattern at the bottom.
 - To delete the top pattern, press
 - To delete the bottom pattern, press



- Adjust the spacing of the repeated pattern.
 - To widen spacing, press
 - To tighten spacing, press





Memo

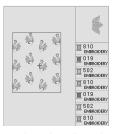
You can only adjust the spacing of patterns enclosed in the red frame.

- Complete repeated patterns by repeating steps 3 through 5.
- to finish repeating. Press



pattern.

When there are two or more patterns, all patterns will be grouped together as one pattern in the red frame.



 When changing the direction in which the pattern will be repeated, all of the patterns in the red frame will automatically be grouped as one repeating unit. Press change a repeated pattern back to one single pattern. See the following section on how to repeat one element of a repeated

■ Repeating One Element of a Repeated Pattern

By using the Cut function, you can select one element of a repeated pattern and repeat only that single element. This function allows you to design complex repeated patterns.

- Choose the direction in which the repeated pattern will be cut.
 - * Press to cut horizontally.
 - * Press um to cut vertically.



→ The pattern direction indicator will change depending on the direction selected.





→ The cut line will move.





→ The repeated pattern will be divided into separate elements.





- **5** Repeat the selected element.
- 6 Press CLOSE to finish repeating.





 Once you have cut a repeated pattern into separate elements, you cannot return to the original repeated pattern.

■ Assigning Thread Marks

By sewing thread marks, you can easily align patterns when sewing a series. When sewing is finished on a pattern, a thread mark in the shape of an arrow will be sewn using the final thread. When sewing a series of patterns, use the point of this arrow for positioning the following designs to be sewn.



Memo

- When repeatedly sewing individual patterns, thread marks can be sewn around the perimeter of the pattern only.
- You cannot sew marks in locations displayed in light gray.
- Press :::
- Press .







Press



to select the thread mark to

be sewn.





Memo

- When there are two or more elements, use
 and and to select a pattern that you want to assign a thread mark(s) to.
- 4 Press CLOSE.

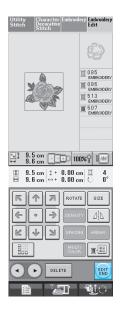


After Editing



Press





2 If you want to sew the pattern immediately, press to call up the sewing screen.



- * Press EDIT to return to the embroidery edit screen.
- * To combine the pattern with other patterns, select the next pattern from this screen (see page 195).
- * See page 146 for more information about sewing patterns.



Memo

If you return to the edit screen after pressing



COMBINING PATTERNS

Editing Combined Patterns

Example: Combining alphabet characters with an embroidery pattern and editing



Press to select an embroidery pattern.

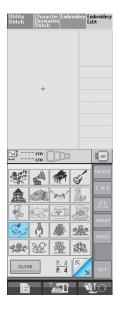




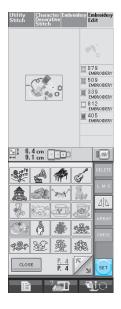


to view P.4, then select







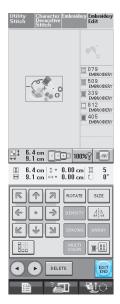






Press EDIT END



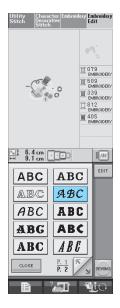


Press A to enter the alphabet characters.





* After selecting S, press LMS to change the character size to M, then enter the remaining characters.



→ The characters you enter will be displayed in the center of the display.



Press





- Use € → to move the characters.
- Press ARRAY to change the layout of the

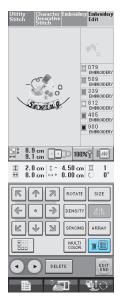
characters.

* See page 185 for more information about changing the layout.

Press to change the color of the

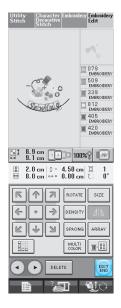
characters.

See page 187 for more information about changing the color.



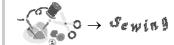
When all editing is finished, press





Sewing Combined Patterns

Combined patterns will be embroidered in the order they were entered. In this example, the embroidery order will be as follows:



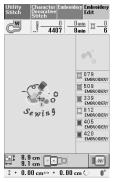


Follow the directions in "Sewing Embroidery Patterns" on page 147.



by following the

color order on the right side of the display.



→ When the border is finished, the [+] cursor will move to the "Sewing" part of the pattern.



Embroider Lewis .



→ When "Sewing" is embroidered, the display returns to the sewing screen.



USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION

In the same way as embroidery patterns in Chapter 5, you can save and retrieve edited embroidery patterns to and from the machine's memory, a personal computer, or USB media. Refer to the relevant sections in Chapter 5 on saving and retrieving embroidery patterns and follow the same procedures in order to save and retrieve edited embroidery patterns. See page 164 for more information about the MEMORY FUNCTION.



Chapter 7 **MY CUSTOM**

STITCH

DESIGNING A STITCH	200
ENTERING STITCH DATA	202
■ Key Functions	202
■ Moving a Point	204
■ Moving Part or All of the Design	205
■ Inserting New Points	206
USING STORED CUSTOM STITCHES	207
Storing Custom Stitches in Your List	207
■ If the Memory is Full	207
Retrieving Stored Stitches	208

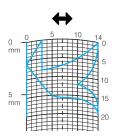
DESIGNING A STITCH

By using the MY CUSTOM STITCH[™] function, you can register stitches you have created yourself. You can also sew designs combining MY CUSTOM STITCH[™] creations with built-in characters (see page 110).



Memo

- Stitches that you create with MY CUSTOM STITCH[™] can be a maximum of 7 mm (approx. 9/32 inch) wide and 37 mm (approx. 1-1/3 inches) long.
- Stitches can be designed more easily with MY CUSTOM STITCH[™] if you first draw the stitch on the included grid sheet.
- Draw the stitch design on the grid sheet (part code SA507, X81277-001).





Memo

Simplify the design so that it can be sewn as a continuous line. For a more attractive stitch, close the design by intersecting lines.





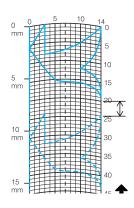
If the design is to be repeated and linked, the start point and end point of the design should be at the same height.

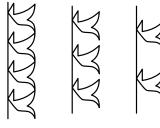


2

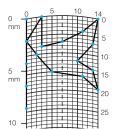
Decide the spacing of the stitch.

* By adjusting the spacing of a stitch, you can create various patterns with one stitch.

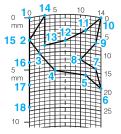




Place points where the pattern intersects with the grid, and connect all the points with a line.



Determine the x and y coordinates of each of the marked points.





Memo

This will determine the stitch design that will be sewn.

Examples of Custom Stitches

C
$\stackrel{\text{\tiny }}{\approx}$

Stitch	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
1	0	12	18	22	23	21	17	14	12	9	6	3	1	3	6
\leftrightarrow	0	0	3	6	10	13	14	13	11	13	14	13	10	6	3
Stitch	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
1	12	41	43	40	41	38	35	32	30	32	35	41	45	47	44
\leftrightarrow	0	0	4	7	11	13	14	13	10	6	3	0	0	4	7
Stitch	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45
1	45	47	50	54	56	55	51	45	70						
\leftrightarrow	11	13	14	13	10	6	3	0	0						



S	Stitch	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
	1	0	30	32	32	32	33	35	35	37	35	32	30	30	29	26
	\leftrightarrow	0	0	1	7	10	12	11	8	12	14	14	11	5	3	8
S	Stitch	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
	1	24	18	13	12	13	10	12	8	12	7	12	6	10	5	10
	\leftrightarrow	10	13	14	14	12	11	10	9	8	6	6	3	2	0	2
S	Stitch	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45
	1	16	19	23	22	17	22	23	19	42						
	\leftrightarrow	1	0	0	6	10	6	0	0	0						



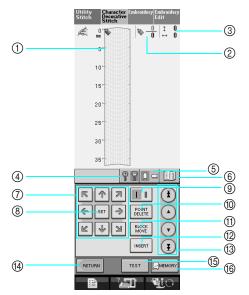
Stitch	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
1	0	3	5	8	12	17	20	24	27	29	31	32	30	27	24
\leftrightarrow	0	5	8	11	13	14	14	13	12	11	9	6	3	1	0
Stitch	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
1	21	18	16	15	15	16	18	21	25	28	33	37	41	43	44
\leftrightarrow	0	1	3	5	8	10	12	13	14	14	13	11	8	5	0
Stitch	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45
1															
\leftrightarrow															



Stitch	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
1	0	5	4	5	8	7	8	11	11	11	16	11	7	4	0
\leftrightarrow	7	7	3	7	7	0	7	7	3	7	7	3	0	3	7
Stitch	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
1	4	7	11	16	21	20	21	24	23	24	27	27	27	32	27
\leftrightarrow	11	14	11	7	7	11	7	7	14	7	7	11	7	7	11
Stitch	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45
1	23	20	16	20	23	27	32								
\leftrightarrow	14	11	7	3	0	3	7								

ENTERING STITCH DATA

■ Key Functions



- ① This area displays the stitch being created.
- ② Displays the number of the present set point over the total number of points in the stitch.

No.	Display	Key Name	Explanation	Page
4	() () () () () () () () () ()	Enlarger key	Press this key to see an enlarged version of the stitch being created.	203
5		Grid direction key	Press this key to change the direction of the grid sheet.	203
6		Image key	Press this key to view an image of the stitch.	204
7		Arrow keys	Use these keys to move 🦠 over the display area.	203-206
8	SET	Set key	Press this key to set a point on the stitch design.	203-205
9	1 1	Single/triple stitching key	Press this key to select whether one or three stitches will be sewn between two points.	203
10	POINT	Point delete key	Press this key to delete a selected point.	204
11)	BLOCK MOVE	Block move key	Press this key to group points together and move them together.	205
12	INSERT	Insert key	Press this key to insert new points on the stitch design.	206
13	E E O	Point-to-point key	Use these keys to move \ from point to point on the stitch, or to the first or last point entered on the stitch.	204-206
14	RETURN	Return key	Press this key to exit the entering stitch data screen.	_
15	TEST	Test key	Press this key to sew a test-run of the stitch.	204, 207
16	MEMORY	MY CUSTOM STITCH [™] memory key	Press this button to store the stitch being created.	207

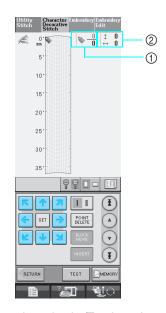
- Press Character Decorative Stitch
- Press .



Use € → to move ♥ to the coordinates

of the first point on the grid sheet.

- * Press \square to change the direction of the grid sheet.
- * Press to enlarge the image of the stitch being created.



- ① Currently selected point/Total number of points
- ② Coordinates of



Memo

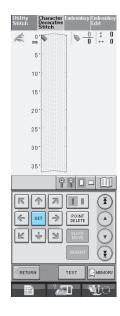
Whenever is in the top left corner of the LCD display, you can use the touch pen to enter data.



Press set to add the point indicated by



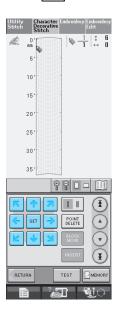
* To insert coordinates with the touch pen, move the tip of the pen to a desired point. Once you release the pen from the screen a point will be entered into the graph at those coordinates. The number of the currently selected point along with the total number of points will be displayed.



- Select whether one stitch or three stitches will be sewn between the first two points.



point and press SET







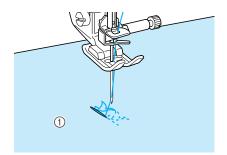
Repeat the steps above for each point that you have drawn on the grid sheet until the stitch design is drawn on the screen as a continuous line.

- POINT to delete a selected point entered. Press
- to sew a test-run of the stitch. Press
 - to return to the original screen. Press
- Press to view an image of the stitch.





- If you have entered points that are too close together, the fabric may not feed properly. Edit the stitch data to leave a larger space between points.
- · If the stitch design is to be repeated and linked, make sure that linking stitches are added so that the stitch designs will not overlap.



① Linking stitches

■ Moving a Point

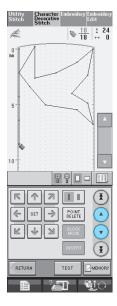


Press (*) or (*) to move 🐚 to the





- point that you want to move.
- To move 🐚 to the first point, press (🚹).
- To move 🐚 to the last point, press (🛂)



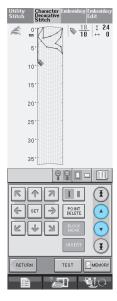


to move the point.

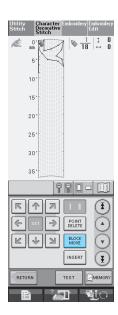


■ Moving Part or All of the Design

- Press or to move to the first point of the section that you want to move.
 - * To move $\$ to the first point, press $\$.
 - * To move $\$ to the last point, press $\$.
 - * You can also move 🐚 by using the touch pen.

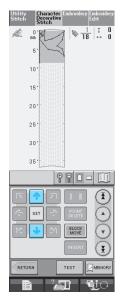


Press BLOCK MOVE.



→ The selected point and all points that were entered after it are selected.





4 Press SET.



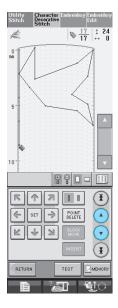
 \rightarrow The section will be moved.



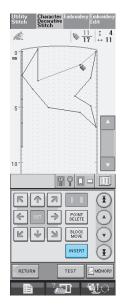
■ Inserting New Points

Press A or v to move to a place on the design where you want to add a new point.

- To move 🐚 to the last point, press 👔 .
- You can also move 🔊 by using the touch pen.



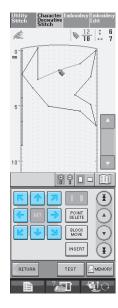
Press INSERT



 \rightarrow A new point is entered and \bigcirc moves to it.







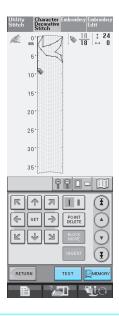
USING STORED CUSTOM STITCHES

Storing Custom Stitches in Your List

Stitch patterns created using the MY CUSTOM STITCHTM function can be stored for later use. Once you finish entering the stitch data, press

[SMEMORY]. The "Saving" message appears and the

Before storing a stitch, press to sew a testrun of the stitch.



Memo

stitch will be stored.

- Storing a stitch pattern takes a few seconds.
- For details on retrieving a stored stitch pattern, see page 208.



Note

 Do not turn off the machine while the "Saving" message is displayed, otherwise the stitch pattern data being saved may be lost.

■ If the Memory is Full

If the following message appears after [is pressed, the stitch pattern cannot be stored because either the machine's memory is full or the stitch pattern being stored is larger than the amount of space available in the memory. To be able to store the stitch pattern in the machine's memory, a previously stored stitch pattern must be deleted.





Note

To save custom stitches to USB media or in the computer, follow the previously described procedure to store the custom stitch, and then

press to select the stitch (see the following "Retrieving Stored Stitches" section).

Press to save the stitch to USB media or in the computer. (For details, see "Saving Stitch Patterns to USB Media (Commercially Available)" on page 120 or "Saving Stitch Patterns in the Computer" on page 121.)



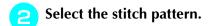
Retrieving Stored Stitches







 \rightarrow A list of stored stitch patterns is displayed.



Press to return to the previous screen without retrieving.





- To delete the stored stitch pattern, press DELETE
- To edit the stored stitch pattern, press | EDIT |.





Chapter 8 Appendix

CARE AND MAINTENANCE210	
About the Maintenance Message210	
Cleaning the LCD Screen210	
Cleaning the Machine Casing210	
Cleaning the Race210	
Adjusting the Alternate Bobbin Case (with no marking)211	
ADJUSTING THE SCREEN212	
Screen Visibility is Low212	
Touch Panel is Malfunctioning212	
TROUBLESHOOTING214	
ERROR MESSAGES217	
■ Alarm Sounds222	
SPECIFICATIONS223	
UPGRADING YOUR MACHINE'S SOFTWARE224	
Upgrade Procedure Using USB Media224	
Upgrade Procedure Using Computer225	

CARE AND MAINTENANCE

A CAUTION

• Be sure to unplug the machine before cleaning it. Otherwise, electric shock or injury may result.

About the Maintenance Message



Once this message appears, it is recommended to take your machine to an authorized retailer for a regular maintenance check. Although this message will disappear and the machine will continue to

function once you press ____ok__, the message will display several more times until the appropriate maintenance is performed.

Please take the time to arrange the maintenance your machine requires once this message appears. Such steps will help to ensure you receive continued, uninterrupted hours of machine operation for the future.

Cleaning the LCD Screen

If the screen is dirty, gently wipe it with a soft, dry cloth. Do not use organic solvents or detergents.

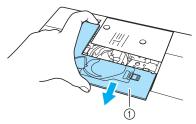
Cleaning the Machine Casing

If the surface of the machine is dirty, lightly soak a cloth in a neutral detergent, squeeze it out firmly, and then wipe the surface. Then wipe again with a dry cloth.

Cleaning the Race

If dust or bits of dirt collect in the race or bobbin case, the machine will not run well, and the bobbin thread detection function may not operate. Keep the machine clean for best results.

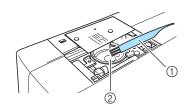
- Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.
- Lower the presser foot.
- Turn the main power to OFF.
- Remove the needle and the presser foot holder (see pages 33 through 34).
- Remove the flat bed attachment or the embroidery unit if either is attached.
- Grasp both sides of the needle plate cover, and then slide it toward you.



- Needle plate cover
- → The needle plate cover is removed.
- Grasp the bobbin case, and then pull it out.



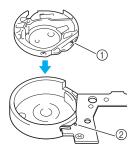
- Bobbin case
- Use the cleaning brush or a vacuum cleaner to remove any lint and dust from the race and its surrounding area.
 - * Do not apply oil to the bobbin case.

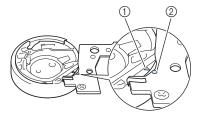


- ① Cleaning brush
- ② Race



Insert the bobbin case so that the ▲ mark on the bobbin case aligns with the ● mark on the machine.





* Align the ▲ and ● marks.

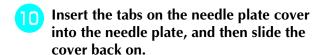


- ① ▲ mark
- 3 Bobbin case



Note

- Never use a bobbin case that is scratched; otherwise, the upper thread may become tangled, the needle may break, or sewing performance may suffer. For a new bobbin case (part code: XC3153-351 (green screw), XC8167-551 (no marking)), contact your nearest authorized service center.
- Be sure that the bobbin case is correctly installed. Otherwise, the needle may break.







Note

 If the needle plate has been removed it is especially important to reinstall the needle plate and tighten the screws prior to installing the bobbin case.

Adjusting the Alternate Bobbin Case (with no marking)

The alternate bobbin case (with no marking) can be easily adjusted when bobbin tension changes are required to accommodate different bobbin threads. To adjust the bobbin tension for embroidery function, using the alternate bobbin case (with no marking), turn the slotted-head (-) screw with a (small) screwdriver.



- ① Do not turn a phillips screw (+).
- Adjust with a screwdriver (small).

■ Correct tension

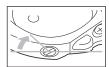
See page 154 about the correct tension.

■ Bobbin thread is loose

Bobbin thread appears slightly on the right side of fabric. If this occurs, turn the slotted-head screw (-) clockwise, being careful not to over-tighten the screw, approximately 30-45 degrees to increase bobbin tension.







- ① Right side
- ② Wrong side

■ Bobbin thread is tight

If this occurs, turn the slotted-head screw (-) counterclockwise, being careful not to over-tighten the screw, approximately 30-45 degrees to decrease bobbin tension.



2



- ① Right side
- ② Wrong side



- When adjusting the alternate bobbin case, be sure to remove the bobbin from the alternate bobbin case.
- DO NOT adjust the position of the Phillips (+) screw on the alternate bobbin case as this may result in damage to the bobbin case, rendering it unusable.
- If the slotted-head screw (-) is difficult to turn, do not use force. Turning the screw too much or providing force in either (rotational) direction may cause damage to the bobbin case. Should damage occur, the bobbin case may not maintain proper tension.

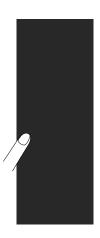


ADJUSTING THE SCREEN

Screen Visibility is Low

If the screen is difficult to see when you turn on the power, follow the steps below.

Press your finger anywhere on the screen. Holding your finger on the screen, turn the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.



- → BRIGHTNESS OF LCD is displayed.
- Use the +, keys to adjust the screen until you can see it easily.



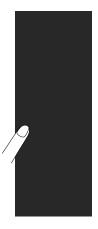
Turn the main power to OFF and back to ON.

Touch Panel is Malfunctioning

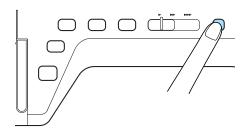
If the screen does not respond correctly when you touch a key (the machine does not perform the operation or performs a different operation), follow the steps below to make the proper adjustments.



Press your finger anywhere on the screen. Holding your finger on the screen, turn the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.



- → BRIGHTNESS OF LCD is displayed.
- Press the "Automatic Threading" button.



→ The touch panel adjustment screen is displayed.



Using the included touch pen, lightly touch the center of each +, in order from 1 to 5.

* If the buzzer sounds one time after you press number 5, the operation is finished. If the buzzer sounds twice, there was an error. In this case, repeat the steps above.



∠ Note

 Only use the included touch pen to touch the screen. Do not use a mechanical pencil, pin, or other sharp object. Do not press strongly on the screen. Otherwise, damage may result.





Turn the main power to OFF, then turn it back to ON.



∠ Note

 If you finish the screen adjustment and the screen still does not respond, or if you cannot do the adjustment, contact your authorized dealer.



TROUBLESHOOTING

If you have a minor problem with your sewing machine, check the following solutions. If the solutions suggested do not correct the problem, contact your authorized dealer. You can also press then

TROUBLESHOOTING for advice about minor sewing problems during sewing. Press close at any time to return to the original screen.

wrong spool cap, spool cap is loose, the thread did not catch the needle bar threader, etc.) Thread is knotted or tangled. Thread is knotted or tangled. Thread is too thick for the needle. Upper thread tension is too strong. Thread is twisted. Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull. Needle is installed incorrectly. There are scratches near the hole in the presser folor. There are scratches near the hole in the presser folor. There are scratches on the race. Replace the needle plate, or consult your authorized dealer. There are scratches on the bobbin or it doesn't rotate properly. Threa are scratches on the bobbin or it doesn't rotate properly. Thread is twisted. Bobbin its est incorrectly. Thread is twisted. Bobbin is set incorrectly. Thread is twisted. Bobbin is set incorrectly. Thread is twisted. Bobbin or it doesn't rotate properly. Thread is twisted. Backline is threaded incorrectly. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly. Replace the hobbin. 22 Skipped stitches Machine is threaded incorrectly. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly. Replace the needle. 34 All steps dealer. Replace the presser foot, or consult your authorized dealer. Replace the bobbin. 22 22 23 24 25 26 26 26 26 27 28 28 28 29 20 20 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 26 27 27 27 28 28 28 29 20 20 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 26 27 27 27 28 28 29 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20	Problem	Cause	Solution	Page
Thread is too thick for the needle. Upper thread tension is too strong. Adjust the thread tension. Replace the needle. Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull. Needle is installed incorrectly. There are scratches near the hole of the needle plate. There are scratches near the hole in the presser foot. There are scratches on the race. Replace the needle plate, or consult your authorized plate. There are scratches on the race. Replace the presser foot, or consult your authorized dealer. There are scratches on the bobbin or it doesn't rotate property. Thread is twisted. Bobbin is set incorrectly. There are scratches on the bobbin or it doesn't rotate property. Thread is twisted. Wachine is threaded incorrectly. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly. Needle is installed incorrectly. Replace the needle. Adachine is installed incorrectly. Adactine the needle. Adac	Upper thread breaks	wrong spool cap, spool cap is loose, the thread	Rethread the machine correctly.	25
Thread is too thick for the needle. Upper thread tension is too strong. Adjust the thread tension. Replace the needle. Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull. Needle is installed incorrectly. There are scratches near the hole of the needle plate. There are scratches near the hole in the presser foot. There are scratches on the race. Replace the needle plate, or consult your authorized plate. There are scratches on the race. Replace the presser foot, or consult your authorized dealer. There are scratches on the bobbin or it doesn't rotate property. Thread is twisted. Bobbin is set incorrectly. There are scratches on the bobbin or it doesn't rotate property. Thread is twisted. Wachine is threaded incorrectly. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly. Needle is installed incorrectly. Replace the needle. Adachine is installed incorrectly. Adactine the needle. Adac		Thread is knotted or tangled.	Rethread upper and lower thread.	22, 25
Thread is twisted. Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull. Needle is installed incorrectly. There are scratches near the hole of the needle plate. There are scratches near the hole in the presser foot. There are scratches near the hole in the presser foot. There are scratches near the hole in the presser foot. There are scratches on the race. Replace the needle plate, or consult your authorized dealer. There are scratches on the race. Replace the presser foot, or consult your authorized dealer. There are scratches on the bobbin or it doesn't rotate properly. There are scratches on the bobbin or it doesn't rotate properly. Thread is twisted. Bobbin it set incorrectly. There are scratches on the bobbin or it doesn't rotate properly. Thread is twisted. We scissors, etc. to out the twisted thread and remove it from the race, etc. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly. We scissors, etc. to out the twisted thread and rethread of				36
And remove if from the race, etc. Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull. Needle is installed incorrectly. There are scratches near the hole of the needle plate. There are scratches near the hole in the presser foot. There are scratches on the race. There are scratches on the race. There are scratches on the race. Replace the presser foot, or consult your authorized dealer. There are scratches on the race. Replace the presser foot, or consult your authorized dealer. There are scratches on the bobbin or it doesn't rotate properly. There are scratches on the bobbin or it doesn't rotate properly. There are scratches on the bobbin or it doesn't rotate properly. Thread is twisted. Use scissors, etc. to cut the twisted thread and remove it from the race, etc. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly. Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric. Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull. Needle is installed incorrectly. Reinstall the needle correctly. 34 Replace the needle. 34 Replace the bobbin thread correctly. Check the "FabricThread/Needle 36 common the selected fabric. Needle is installed incorrectly. Reinstall the needle correctly. 34 Replace the needle. 34 Remove the dust or lint with the brush. 210 Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly. Spool cap is set incorrectly. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly. Spool cap is set incorrectly. Reinstall the needle correctly. Check the reabire/Thread/Needle 22, 25 Threa is mistake in the upper or bobbin thread incorrectly. Check the reabire for threading the machine and rethread it correctly. Spool cap is set incorrectly. Reinstall the needle correctly. Check the reabire for threading the spool cap, the neadle. 34 Remove the dust or lint with the brus		Upper thread tension is too strong.	Adjust the thread tension.	43, 154
Needle is installed incorrectly. There are scratches near the hole of the needle plate. Per consult your authorized dealer. There are scratches near the hole in the presser foot, or consult your authorized dealer. There are scratches on the race. Replace the presser foot, or consult your authorized dealer. There are scratches on the race. Replace the presser foot, or consult your authorized dealer. There are scratches on the race. Replace the presser foot, or consult your authorized dealer. Per consult your authorized dealer. Replace the presser foot, or consult your authorized dealer. Per consult your authorized Per consult your authorized dealer. Per consult your authorized Per consult your au		Thread is twisted.	The state of the s	_
There are scratches near the hole of the needle plate. There are scratches near the hole of the needle plate. There are scratches near the hole in the presser foot. There are scratches near the hole in the presser foot. There are scratches on the race. Replace the presser foot, or consult your authorized dealer. Replace the race, or consult your authorized dealer. Replace the bobbin. There are scratches on the bobbin or it doesn't rotate properly. There are scratches on the bobbin or it doesn't rotate properly. There are scratches on the bobbin or it doesn't rotate properly. There are scratches on the bobbin or it doesn't rotate properly. There are scratches on the bobbin or it doesn't rotate properly. Replace the bobbin. Check the steps for threading the machine and remove it from the race, etc. Check the steps for threading the machine and remove it from the race, etc. Check the steps for threading the machine and remove it from the race, etc. Check the "FabricThread/Needle Combination" chart. Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull. Replace the needle. All the needle. There is a mistake in the upper or bobbin cheading. Spool cap is set incorrectly. Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric. Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull. Stitches are too long when sewing thin fabrics. Thread tension is set incorrectly. Wrong presser foot. Use the correct presser foot. Shorten the stitch length. Adjust the thread tension. Yes the method for attaching the machine and rethread it ensemble. Pieces of thread are caught in the race. Check the "FabricThread/Needle" Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the medile. Pieces of thread are caught in the race. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine. There are scratches on the race. Check the steps for threading the		Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull.	Replace the needle.	34
plate. There are scratches near the hole in the presser foot. There are scratches on the race. Replace the presser foot, or consult your authorized dealer. There are scratches on the race. Replace the race, or consult your authorized dealer. There are scratches on the bobbin or it doesn't rotate properly. There are scratches on the bobbin or it doesn't rotate properly. There are scratches on the bobbin or it doesn't rotate properly. Thread is twisted. Use scissors, etc. to cut the twisted thread and remove it from the race, etc. Skipped stitches Machine is threaded incorrectly. Use scissors, etc. to cut the twisted thread and remove it from the race, etc. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly. Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric. Combination' chart. Replace the needle. 36 Scientific for the selected fabric. Replace the needle. 34 Replace the needle. 35 Replace the needle. 36 Remove the dust or lint with the brush. 210 Replace the needle. 25 Replace the needle. 25 Replace the needle. 26 Replace the needle. 26 Replace the needle. 27 Replace the needle. 27 Replace the needle. 28 Replace the needle. 28 Replace the needle. 28 Replace the needle. 29 Replace t		Needle is installed incorrectly.	Reinstall the needle correctly.	34
toot. There are scratches on the race. Beplace the race, or consult your authorized dealer. There are scratches on the race. Beplace the race, or consult your authorized dealer. Bobbin is set incorrectly. Reset the bobbin thread correctly. There are scratches on the bobbin or it doesn't rotate properly. Thread is twisted. Washine is threaded incorrectly. Washine is threaded incorrectly. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly. Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric. Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull. Replace the needle. Needle is installed incorrectly. Replace the needle. Dust or lint has collected under the needle plate. Fabric puckers There is a mistake in the upper or bobbin and rethread directricity. Spool cap is set incorrectly. Check the method for attaching the machine and rethread for correctly. Spool cap is set incorrectly. Check the method for attaching the spool cap. then restatch the spool cap. Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric. Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull. Replace the needle. 34 Check the method for attaching the spool cap. 25 Using improper needle or thread for the check the "Tabric-Thread/Needle Combination" chart. Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull. Stitches are too long when sewing thin fabrics. Shorten the stitch length. 43 Wrong presser foot. Use the correct presser foot. "STITCH SETTING CHART" Ligh-pitched sound while sewing Pieces of thread are caught in the race. Clean the race. Upper threading is incorrect. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly. Adjust the thread tension. 43, 154 Wrong presser foot. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine. Adjust the threace the needle. 34 Stitches are too long when sewing thin fabrics. Shorten the stitch length. 42 Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine. Check the steps f			1 '	55
doaler. Gobbin thread breaks Bobbin is set incorrectly. Reset the bobbin thread correctly. 22		I ·		32
There are scratches on the bobbin or it doesn't rotate properly. Thread is twisted. Thread is twisted. Wachine is threaded incorrectly. Washine is threaded incorrectly. Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric. Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull. Replace the needle. Dust or lint has collected under the needle plate. Thread ing proper needle or thread for the selected fabric. Replace the needle correctly. Needle is installed incorrectly. Replace the needle correctly. Needle is defective. Dust or lint has collected under the needle plate. There is a mistake in the upper or bobbin threading. Spool cap is set incorrectly. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly. Adjust the needle or threading the machine and rethread it correctly. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly. Check the steps for threading the spool cap. There is a mistake in the upper or bobbin threading. Spool cap is set incorrectly. Check the method for attaching the spool cap. Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric. Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull. Replace the needle. 34 Stitches are too long when sewing thin fabrics. Thread tension is set incorrectly. Adjust the thread tension. 43, 154 Wrong presser foot. Use the correct presser foot. "STITCH SETTING CHART" Ligh-pitched sound while sewing Pieces of thread are caught in the race. Upper threading is incorrect. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine. There are scratches on the race. Clean the race. Clean the race. Check the "Fabrica" in the reading the machine and rethread the machine. Threading hook does not pass through the eye of the needle. 34 Shorten the stitch length. 42 Shorten the stitch length. 43 44 45 46 47 47 47 48 49 49 40 40 40 40 40 40 40 40		There are scratches on the race.	1	210
rotate properly. Thread is twisted. Thread is twisted. Thread is twisted. Machine is threaded incorrectly. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly. Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric. Needle is iturned, bent or the point is dull. Needle is idective. Needle is defective. Dust or lint has collected under the needle plate. There is a mistake in the upper or bobbin threading. Spool cap is set incorrectly. Check the method for attaching the machine and rethread it correctly. All the selected fabric. There is a mistake in the upper or bobbin and rethread it correctly. Spool cap is set incorrectly. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly. Spool cap is set incorrectly. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly. Spool cap is set incorrectly. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly. Spool cap is set incorrectly. Check the method for attaching the spool cap, then reatlach the spool cap. Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric. Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull. Replace the needle. 34 Stitches are too long when sewing thin fabrics. Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull. Replace the needle. 34 Stitches are too long when sewing thin fabrics. Shorten the stitch length. 42 Thread tension is set incorrectly. Wrong presser foot. Stitch server foot. Stitch server foot. Stitch server foot. Upper threading is incorrect. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine. Pieces of thread are caught in the race. Clean the race. Clean the race. Clean the race. 210 Dust or lint is caught in the race. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine. Replace the race, or consult your authorized dealer. Threading hook does not pass through the eye of the Needle Position" button to raise the needle. Threading hook does not pass through the eye of the Needle Position button to raise the needle.	Bobbin thread breaks	Bobbin is set incorrectly.	Reset the bobbin thread correctly.	22
Skipped stitches Machine is threaded incorrectly. Machine is threaded incorrectly. Check the steps for thread/Needle selected fabric. Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull. Needle is defective. Dust or lint has collected under the needle plate. Fabric puckers There is a mistake in the upper or bobbin thread it correctly. Spool cap is set incorrectly. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly. Ack the steps for threading the machine and rethreading. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly. Check the steps for threading the spool cap, then restatch the spool cap. Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric. Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull. Replace the needle. 34 Stitches are too long when sewing thin fabrics. Thread tension is set incorrectly. Wrong presser foot. Use the correct presser foot. Wrong presser foot. Use the correct presser foot. Wrong presser foot. Check the steps for thread from the spool cap, then reattach the spool cap. Check the "Fabric/Thread/Needle Combination" chart. Replace the needle. 34 Stitches are too long when sewing thin fabrics. Shorten the stitch length. 42 Thread tension is set incorrectly. Adjust the thread tension. 43, 154 Wrong presser foot. Use the correct presser foot. "STITCH SETTING CHART" Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine. Pieces of thread are caught in the race. Clean the race. Upper threading is incorrect. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine. There are scratches on the race. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine. Pieces of thread are caught in the race. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine. There are scratches on the race. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine. Pieces of thread are caught in the race. Check the steps for thr			Replace the bobbin.	22
and rethread it correctly. Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric. Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull. Replace the needle. 34 Needle is installed incorrectly. Reinstall the needle correctly. 34 Needle is defective. Dust or lint has collected under the needle plate. Remove the dust or lint with the brush. 210 There is a mistake in the upper or bobbin the race. Combination" chart. Replace the needle. 34 Replace the needle. 34 Replace the needle. 34 There is a mistake in the upper or bobbin and rethread it correctly. Spool cap is set incorrectly. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly. Check the method for attaching the spool cap, then reattach the spool cap. Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric. Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull. Replace the needle. 34 Stitches are too long when sewing thin fabrics. Shorten the stitch length. 42 Thread tension is set incorrectly. Wrong presser foot. Use the correct presser foot. "STITCH SETTING CHART" CHART" Idip-pitched sound while sewing Dust or lint is caught in the feed dogs. Remove the dust or lint. 210 Pieces of thread are caught in the race. Clean the race. Clean the race. 210 Upper threading is incorrect. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine. There are scratches on the race. Replace the race, or consult your authorized dealer. Cannot thread the is not in the correct position. Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle. Threading hook does not pass through the eye of the needle. Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.		Thread is twisted.	1	_
selected fabric. Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull. Needle is installed incorrectly. Needle is installed incorrectly. Reinstall the needle correctly. Replace the needle. Dust or lint has collected under the needle plate. Remove the dust or lint with the brush. 210 There is a mistake in the upper or bobbin threading. Spool cap is set incorrectly. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly. Check the method for attaching the spool cap, then reattach the spool cap. Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric. Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull. Replace the needle. 34 Check the "Fabric/Thread/Needle Combination" chart. Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull. Replace the needle. 34 Stitches are too long when sewing thin fabrics. Thread tension is set incorrectly. Adjust the thread tension. 43, 154 Wrong presser foot. Use the correct presser foot. "STITCH SETTING CHART" CHART" CHART" Pieces of thread are caught in the race. Clean the race. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine. There are scratches on the race. Replace the needle. Needle is not in the correct position. Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle. Threading hook does not pass through the eye of the needle. Threading hook does not pass through the eye of the needle.	Skipped stitches	Machine is threaded incorrectly.		25
Needle is installed incorrectly. Reinstall the needle correctly. 34				36
Needle is defective. Replace the needle. 34		Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull.	Replace the needle.	34
Dust or lint has collected under the needle plate. Remove the dust or lint with the brush. 210 Tabric puckers There is a mistake in the upper or bobbin threading. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly. Spool cap is set incorrectly. Check the method for attaching the spool cap, then reattach the spool cap. Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric. Combination" chart. Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull. Replace the needle. 34 Stitches are too long when sewing thin fabrics. Shorten the stitch length. 42 Thread tension is set incorrectly. Adjust the thread tension. 43, 154 Wrong presser foot. Use the correct presser foot. "STITCH SETTING CHART" High-pitched sound while sewing Dust or lint is caught in the feed dogs. Remove the dust or lint. 210 Pieces of thread are caught in the race. Clean the race. 210 Upper threading is incorrect. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine. There are scratches on the race. Replace the race, or consult your authorized dealer. Cannot thread the needle is not in the correct position. Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle. Threading hook does not pass through the eye of the needle.		Needle is installed incorrectly.	Reinstall the needle correctly.	34
There is a mistake in the upper or bobbin threading. Spool cap is set incorrectly. Check the method for attaching the spool cap, then reattach the spool cap. Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric. Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull. Replace the needle. Stitches are too long when sewing thin fabrics. Thread tension is set incorrectly. Wrong presser foot. Dust or lint is caught in the feed dogs. Pieces of thread are caught in the race. Upper threading is incorrect. Check the "Fabrica" Thread/Needle Combination" chart. Shorten the stitch length. 42 Thread tension is set incorrectly. Adjust the thread tension. 43, 154 Wrong presser foot. Use the correct presser foot. "STITCH SETTING CHART" Check the steps for threading the machine. Pieces of thread are caught in the race. Clean the race. Upper threading is incorrect. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine. There are scratches on the race. Replace the race, or consult your authorized dealer. Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle. Threading hook does not pass through the eye of the needle.		Needle is defective.	Replace the needle.	34
threading. Spool cap is set incorrectly. Check the method for attaching the spool cap, then reattach the spool cap. Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric. Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull. Replace the needle. Stitches are too long when sewing thin fabrics. Thread tension is set incorrectly. Wrong presser foot. Dust or lint is caught in the feed dogs. Pieces of thread are caught in the race. Check the "Fabric/Thread/Needle Combination" chart. Replace the needle. Shorten the stitch length. 42 Thread tension is set incorrectly. Adjust the thread tension. 43, 154 Wrong presser foot. Use the correct presser foot. "STITCH SETTING CHART" High-pitched sound while sewing Pieces of thread are caught in the race. Clean the race. Clean the race. Clean the race. Clean the race. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine. There are scratches on the race. Replace the race, or consult your authorized dealer. Replace the race, or consult your authorized dealer. Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle. Threading hook does not pass through the eye of the needle. Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.		Dust or lint has collected under the needle plate.	Remove the dust or lint with the brush.	210
then reattach the spool cap. Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric. Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull. Stitches are too long when sewing thin fabrics. Thread tension is set incorrectly. Wrong presser foot. Dust or lint is caught in the feed dogs. Pieces of thread are caught in the race. Upper threading is incorrect. Cannot thread the needle Needle is not in the correct position. Thread tension is set incorrectly. Adjust the thread tension. 43, 154 Use the correct presser foot. "STITCH SETTING CHART" Clean the race. 210 Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine. There are scratches on the race. Replace the race, or consult your authorized dealer. Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle. Threading hook does not pass through the eye of the needle. Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.	Fabric puckers			22, 25
selected fabric. Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull. Stitches are too long when sewing thin fabrics. Shorten the stitch length. Thread tension is set incorrectly. Wrong presser foot. Set to correct presser foot. Wrong presser foot. Dust or lint is caught in the feed dogs. Pieces of thread are caught in the race. Upper threading is incorrect. Chart is check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine. There are scratches on the race. Cannot thread the needle Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle. Threading hook does not pass through the eye of the needle. Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.		Spool cap is set incorrectly.		25
Stitches are too long when sewing thin fabrics. Shorten the stitch length. Thread tension is set incorrectly. Adjust the thread tension. Wrong presser foot. Use the correct presser foot. "STITCH SETTING CHART" Dust or lint is caught in the feed dogs. Pieces of thread are caught in the race. Clean the race. Upper threading is incorrect. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine. There are scratches on the race. Cannot thread the needle. Needle is not in the correct position. Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle. Threading hook does not pass through the eye of the needle.				36
Thread tension is set incorrectly. Wrong presser foot. Use the correct presser foot. "STITCH SETTING CHART" Dust or lint is caught in the feed dogs. Pieces of thread are caught in the race. Upper threading is incorrect. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine. There are scratches on the race. Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle. Threading hook does not pass through the eye of the needle.		Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull.	Replace the needle.	34
Wrong presser foot. Use the correct presser foot. "STITCH SETTING CHART" Dust or lint is caught in the feed dogs. Pieces of thread are caught in the race. Upper threading is incorrect. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine. There are scratches on the race. Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle. Threading hook does not pass through the eye of the needle.		Stitches are too long when sewing thin fabrics.	Shorten the stitch length.	42
High-pitched sound while sewing Dust or lint is caught in the feed dogs. Remove the dust or lint. 210 Pieces of thread are caught in the race. Clean the race. 210 Upper threading is incorrect. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine. 25 There are scratches on the race. Replace the race, or consult your authorized dealer. Cannot thread the needle Needle is not in the correct position. Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle. Threading hook does not pass through the eye of the needle.		Thread tension is set incorrectly.	Adjust the thread tension.	43, 154
Pieces of thread are caught in the race. Upper threading is incorrect. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine. There are scratches on the race. Cannot thread the needle is not in the correct position. Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle. Threading hook does not pass through the eye of the needle.		Wrong presser foot.	Use the correct presser foot.	"STITCH SETTING CHART"
Upper threading is incorrect. Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine. There are scratches on the race. Replace the race, or consult your authorized dealer. Cannot thread the needle is not in the correct position. Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle. Threading hook does not pass through the eye of the needle.	High-pitched sound	Dust or lint is caught in the feed dogs.	Remove the dust or lint.	210
and rethread the machine. There are scratches on the race. Replace the race, or consult your authorized dealer. Cannot thread the needle Needle is not in the correct position. Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle. Threading hook does not pass through the eye of the needle.	while sewing	Pieces of thread are caught in the race.	Clean the race.	210
dealer. Cannot thread the needle Needle is not in the correct position. Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle. Threading hook does not pass through the eye of the needle. Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.		Upper threading is incorrect.		25
needle Threading hook does not pass through the eye of the needle. Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.		There are scratches on the race.		210
of the needle. needle.	Cannot thread the needle	Needle is not in the correct position.		3
Needle is installed incorrectly. Reinstall the needle correctly. 34				3
		Needle is installed incorrectly.	Reinstall the needle correctly.	34

Problem	Cause	Solution	Page
Cannot lower the presser foot with the presser foot lever	Presser foot was raised using the "Presser Foot Lifter" button.	Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to lower the presser foot.	3
Thread tension is incorrect	Upper threading is incorrect.	Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine.	25
	Bobbin is set incorrectly.	Reset the bobbin.	22
	Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric.	Check the "Fabric/Thread/Needle Combination" chart.	36
	Presser foot holder is not attached correctly.	Reattach the presser foot holder correctly.	33
	Thread tension is set incorrectly.	Adjust the thread tension.	43, 154
Character pattern does not turn out	Wrong presser foot was used.	Attach the correct presser foot.	"STITCH SETTING CHART"
	Pattern adjustment settings were set incorrectly.	Revise the pattern adjustment settings.	103
	Did not use a stabilizer material on thin fabrics or stretch fabrics.	Attach a stabilizer material.	102
	Thread tension is set incorrectly.	Adjust the thread tension.	43, 154
Embroidery pattern does not sew out	Thread is twisted.	Use scissors, etc., to cut the twisted thread and remove it from the race, etc.	_
correctly	Fabric was not inserted into the frame correctly (fabric was loose, etc.).	If the fabric is not stretched tight in the frame, the pattern may turn out poorly or there may be shrinkage of the pattern. Set the fabric into the frame correctly.	140
	Stabilizing material was not attached.	Always use stabilizing material, especially with stretch fabrics, lightweight fabrics, fabrics with a coarse weave, or fabrics that often cause pattern shrinkage. See your authorized dealer for the proper stabilizer.	138
	There was an object placed near the machine, and the carriage or embroidery frame hit the object during sewing.	If the frame bumps something during sewing, the pattern will turn out poorly. Do not place anything in the area where the frame may bump it during sewing.	146
	Fabric outside the frame edges interferes with the sewing arm, so the embroidery unit cannot move.	Reinsert the fabric in the embroidery frame so that the excess fabric is away from the sewing arm, and rotate the pattern 180 degrees.	140
	Fabric is too heavy, so the embroidery unit cannot move freely.	Place a large thick book or similar object under the arm head to lightly lift the heavy side and keep it level.	_
	Fabric is hanging off the table.	If the fabric is hanging off the table during embroidery, the embroidery unit will not move freely. Place the fabric so that it does not hang off the table or hold the fabric to keep it from dragging.	146
	Fabric is snagged or caught on something.	Stop the machine and place the fabric so that it does not get caught or snagged.	_
	Embroidery frame was removed during sewing (for example, to reset the bobbin). The presser foot was bumped or moved while removing or attaching the embroidery frame, or the embroidery unit was moved.	If the presser foot is bumped or the embroidery unit is moved during sewing, the pattern will not turn out. Be careful when removing or reattaching the embroidery frame during sewing.	150
Loops appear on the	The thread tension is incorrectly set.	Adjust the thread tension.	154
surface of the fabric when embroidering	The tension of the upper thread is incorrectly set for the combination of the fabric, thread and pattern being used.	Use the embroidery needle plate cover.	146
	The combination of the bobbin case and bobbin thread is incorrect.	Change the bobbin case or bobbin thread so that the correct combination is used.	146

Problem	Cause	Solution	Page		
Needle breaks	Needle is installed incorrectly.	Reinstall the needle correctly.	34		
	Needle clamp screw is not tightened.	Tighten the needle clamp screw.	35		
	Needle is turned or bent.	Replace the needle.	34		
	Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric.	Check the "Fabric/Thread/Needle Combination" chart.	36		
	Wrong presser foot was used.	Use the recommended presser foot.	"STITCH SETTING CHART"		
	Upper thread tension is too strong.	Adjust the thread tension setting.	43, 154		
	Fabric is pulled during sewing.	Do not pull the fabric during sewing.	_		
	Spool cap is set incorrectly.	Check the method for attaching the spool cap, then reattach the spool cap.	25		
	There are scratches around the holes in the needle plate.	Replace the needle plate, or consult your authorized dealer.	55		
	There are scratches around the hole(s) in the presser foot.	Replace the presser foot, or consult your authorized dealer.	32		
	There are scratches on the race.	Replace the race, or consult your authorized dealer.	210		
	Needle is defective.	Replace the needle.	34		
Fabric does not feed through the machine	Feed dogs are set in the down position.	logs are set in the down position. Use the feed dog position lever to raise the feed dogs.			
	Stitches are too close together.	Lengthen the stitch length setting.	42		
	Wrong presser foot was used.	Use the correct presser foot.	"STITCH SETTING CHART"		
	Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull.	Replace the needle.	34		
	Thread is entangled.	Cut the entangled thread and remove it from the race.	_		
Machine does not	There is no pattern selected.	Select a pattern.	48, 98, 130, 177		
operate	"Start/Stop" button was not pushed.	Press the "Start/Stop" button.	3		
	Main power switch is not turned on.	Turn the main power to ON.	8		
	Presser foot is not lowered.	Lower the presser foot.	3		
	"Start/Stop" button was pushed with the foot controller attached.	Remove the foot controller, or use the foot controller to operate the machine.	39		
	Speed control lever is set to control the zigzag stitch width.	Use the foot controller instead of the "Start/Stop" button to operate the machine.	39		
	All keys and buttons have been locked by	Press to unlock all keys and buttons.	32, 34		
Embroidery unit does	There is no pattern selected.	Select a pattern.	130, 177		
not operate	Main power switch is not turned on.	Turn the main power to ON.	8		
	Embroidery unit is not attached correctly.	Reattach the embroidery unit correctly.	128		
	Embroidery frame was attached before the unit was initialized.	Perform the initialization process correctly.	128		
LCD display is difficult to see	LCD contrast is not properly adjusted.	Adjust the LCD contrast.	15, 212		
Nothing happens, even if the LCD display is pressed	The screen has been locked.	Press either of the following keys to unlock the screen.	_		

A CAUTION

- This machine is equipped with a thread detection device. If the "Start/Stop" button is pushed before the upper threading is done, the machine will not operate properly. Also, depending on the pattern selected, the machine may feed the fabric even if the needle is raised. This is due to the needle bar release mechanism. At these times, the machine will make a sound different from that made during normal sewing. This is not the sign of a malfunction.
- If the power is disconnected during sewing:
 Turn the main power to OFF and unplug the machine.
 If you restart the machine, follow the instructions for operating the machine correctly.

ERROR MESSAGES

If the machine is not properly set and the "Start/Stop" button or the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button is pressed, or if the operation procedure is incorrect, the machine does not start. An alarm sounds and an error message is displayed on the LCD. If an error message displays, follow the instructions in the message.

Below is an explanation of 55 error messages. Refer to these when necessary (if you press the operation correctly while the error message is displayed, the message disappears).

CLOSE

or do

A CAUTION

• Be sure to rethread the machine. If you press the "Start/Stop" button without rethreading the machine, the thread tension may be wrong or the needle may break and cause injury.



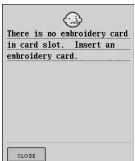
This message is displayed when the motor locks due to tangled thread or for other reasons related to thread delivery.



This message is displayed when a button, such as the "Start/Stop" button, is pushed while the presser foot is raised.



This message is displayed when the upper thread is broken or not threaded correctly, and the "Start/Stop" button or the "Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch" button is pressed.



This message is displayed when



is touched

without an embroidery card inserted.



This message is displayed if the

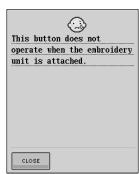


is touched when

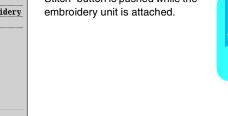
an unusable embroidery card is inserted.



This message is displayed when there is no stitch or embroidery pattern selected and the "Start/ Stop" button or the "Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch" button is pressed.



This message is displayed when the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button is pushed while the embroidery unit is attached.





This message is displayed when you try to combine more than 71 patterns.



This message is displayed when the patterns you are editing take up too much memory, or if you are editing too many patterns for the memory.



This message is displayed when the "Start/Stop" button is pushed to sew Utility stitches or Character/Decorative stitches while the foot controller is connected. (This message does not appear when embroidering.)



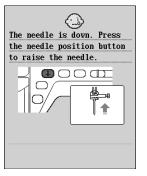
This message is displayed when the "Start/ Stop" button is pushed while the machine is in embroidery edit mode and a pattern is being edited.



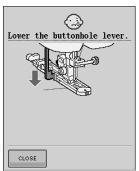
This message is displayed when a key on the LCD display is touched while the needle is in the down position.



This message is displayed when the buttonhole lever is down, a stitch other than a buttonhole is selected, and the "Start/ Stop" button or the "Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch" button is pushed.



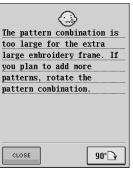
This message is displayed when the embroidery unit is attached and the power is turned on with the needle in the down position.



This message is displayed when the buttonhole lever is up, a buttonhole stitch is selected, and the "Start/ Stop" button or "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button is pushed.



This message is displayed when there are too many characters and the curved character configuration is impossible.



This message is displayed when the machine is in embroidery mode and the combined character pattern is too large for the embroidery frame. You can rotate the pattern 90 degrees and continue combining characters.



This message is displayed when the machine is in embroidery mode, and the character pattern combination is too large to fit in the embroidery frame.





This message is displayed when the machine is in embroidery mode and the small frame is attached, and the selected pattern does not fit in the small



This message is displayed when, with the machine in embroidery mode and the small embroidery frame or medium embroidery frame attached, the selected pattern is larger than the embroidery area of the medium embroidery frame.



This message is displayed when, with the machine in embroidery mode and the small embroidery frame, medium embroidery frame or large embroidery frame attached, the selected pattern is larger than the embroidery area of the large embroidery frame.



This message is displayed when the machine is in embroidery mode and the embroidery unit tries to initialize while the embroidery frame is attached.



This message is displayed when the machine is ready to sew an embroidery pattern, and the "Start/Stop" button is pushed while the embroidery frame is not attached.



This message is displayed when the bobbin is being wound, and the motor locks because the thread is tangled, etc.



This message is displayed when the bobbin thread is running out.



This message is displayed when the embroidery unit is initializing.



This message is displayed when the memory is full and the stitch or pattern cannot be saved.



This message is displayed when the machine is retrieving a previously saved pattern while in embroidery edit mode.





This message is displayed when, after selecting a pattern,



is pressed and the

pattern is about to be deleted.



This message is displayed when the speed control lever is set to control the zigzag stitch width, and the "Start/ Stop" button is pushed. Use the foot controller to operate the machine.



This message is displayed when the machine is in embroidery edit mode, and you try to use an editing function when the pattern is not completely within the red outline.



This message is displayed when you try to save a copyright protected pattern to USB media/ Computer. According to copyright laws, patterns that are illegal to reproduce or edit cannot be saved to floppy disks. If this message displays, save the pattern in the machine's memory.



This message is displayed when the machine is in twin needle mode and a pattern that cannot be sewn with the twin needle is selected.



This message is displayed when the foot controller is pressed while the embroidery unit is attached.



This message is displayed when there is a possibility that the data for the selected pattern is corrupted.



This message is displayed when RESET is pressed when changing thread colors.



This message is displayed when the "Start/Stop" button is pushed without raising the feed dogs after the feed dogs are lowered or after the embroidery unit is attached.



This message is displayed when



pressed when the feed dogs are lowered.





This message is displayed when the "Start/Stop" button is pushed and the machine is in embroidery mode, but the embroidery unit is not attached.



This message is displayed when you try to recall or save a pattern while no USB media is loaded.



This message is displayed when you try to use incompatible media.



This message is displayed when you attempt to select a pattern after the USB media in which the pattern is saved has been changed.



This message is displayed when an error occurs with the USB media.



This message is displayed while the USB media is transmitting.



This message is displayed when the memory is full and a pattern must be deleted.



This message is displayed when the "Presser Foot Lifter" button is pushed while the presser foot lever is raised/the needle is lowered.



This message is displayed if some malfunction occurs.



This message is displayed when you try to sew with a stitch other than a middle needle position stitch while the single-hole needle plate is installed. This message is displayed when the needle plate is removed with the machine on or when the machine is turned on in the embroidery or embroidery edit





This message is displayed when replacing the embroidering bobbin thread.



This message is displayed when a border pattern is displayed in the embroidery edit screen after being displayed in the sewing screen.



This message is displayed when you try to use incompatible USB media.



This message is displayed when it seems that the upper thread has not been threaded correctly.



This message is displayed when

is pressed (the presser foot is raised).



This message is displayed when the automatic needle threading button is pushed while twin needle sewing is set.



This confirmation message appears after the machine is turned on and the carriage of the embroidery unit has moved to its initial position.

■ Alarm Sounds

If the operation procedure was correct, the machine will beep once. If the operation procedure was incorrect, the machine will beep twice or four times.



Memo

If you want to turn the alarm off, press



. See page 12 for more details.

SPECIFICATIONS

	Item	Specification
Sewing Machine	Dimensions	55.6 cm (W) × 30.5 cm (H) × 25.8 cm (D) (approx. 21-7/8 inches (W) × 12 inches (H) × 10-1/8 inches (D))
	Case Dimensions	58.2 cm (W) × 31.9 cm (H) × 28.4 cm (D) (approx. 22-7/8 inches (W) × 12-1/2 inches (H) × 11-1/8 inches (D))
	Weight	12 kg (27 lb.) (with case: 14.3 kg (32 lb.))
	Sewing speed	70 to 1000 stitches per minute
	Needles	Home sewing machine needles (HA × 130)
Embroidery Unit	Dimensions	45.8 cm (W) × 13.1cm (H) × 46.2 cm (D) (approx. 18 inches (W) × 5-1/8 inches (H) × 18-1/4 inches (D))
	Dimensions of machine with embroidery unit attached	72.4 cm (W) × 30.5 cm (H) × 46.2 cm (D) (approx. 28-1/2 inches (W) × 12 inches (H) × 18-1/4 inches (D))
	Weight	3.6 kg (8 lb.)

UPGRADING YOUR MACHINE'S SOFTWARE

You can use USB media or a computer to download software upgrades for your sewing machine. When an upgrade program is available on "http://solutions.brother.com", please download the files following the instructions on the web site and steps below.

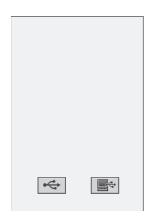


Memo

- When the machine's software is upgraded, saved combinations of character and decorative stitches are erased.
- During the process of upgrading software, the buzzer will not sound when a key is pressed.

Upgrade Procedure Using USB Media

- While pressing the "Automatic Threading" button, turn the main power to ON.
 - \rightarrow The following screen will appear on the LCD.
- Press .



Insert the USB media into the USB port connector on the machine, making sure the media only contains the upgrade file.





→ The upgrade file is downloaded.



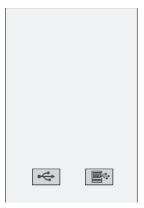
Note

If an error occurs, a red text error message will appear. If the download is performed successfully, an "Upgrade complete." message will appear.

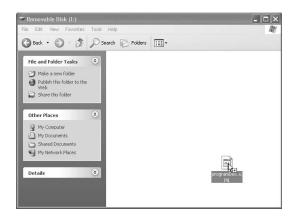
Remove the USB media, and turn the machine off and on again.

Upgrade Procedure Using Computer

- While pressing the "Automatic Threading" button, turn the main power to ON.
 - → The following screen will appear on the LCD.
- Press .



- Plug the USB cable connector into the corresponding USB port connectors for the computer and for the machine.
 - → "Removable Disk" will appear in "My Computer".
- Copy the upgrade file to "Removable Disk".



→ The "Connected to PC. Do not disconnect the USB cable." message will appear.

5 When the message disappears, press

LOAD



→ The upgrade file is downloaded.



Note

If an error occurs, a red text error message will appear. If the download is performed successfully, an "Upgrade complete." message will appear.

Onplug the USB cable, and turn the machine off and on again.



Appendix

STITCH SETTING CHART

The following chart shows information for each utility stitch concerning applications, stitch lengths, stitch widths, and whether or not the twin needle mode can be used.

Stitch	Stitch name	Stitch name Presser Applications	Applications		titch width nm (inch.)]		itch length nm (inch.)]	Twin needle
		1001		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	Heedle
1-01	Straight stitch (Left)	*1	General sewing, gather, pintuck, etc. Reverse stitch is sewn while pressing "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button.	0.0 (0)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-02	Straight stitch (Left)	J	General sewing, gather, pintuck, etc. Reinforcement stitch is sewn while pressing "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button.	0.0 (0)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-03	Straight stitch (Middle)	* J	General sewing, gather, pintuck, etc. Reverse stitch is sewn while pressing "Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch" button.	3.5 (1/8)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-04	Straight stitch (Middle)	*1	General sewing, gather, pintuck, etc. Reinforcement stitch is sewn while pressing "Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch" button.	3.5 (1/8)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-05 	Triple stretch stitch	* J	General sewing for reinforcement and decorative topstitching	0.0 (0)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-06 4 7	Stem stitch	* J	Reinforced stitching, sewing and decorative applications	1.0 (1/16)	1.0 - 3.0 (1/16 - 1/8)	2.5 (3/32)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-07	Decorative stitch	r R	Decorative stitching, top stitching	0.0 (0)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-08 	Basting stitch	* J	Basting	0.0 (0)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	20.0 (3/4)	5.0 - 30.0 (3/16 - 1-3/16)	NO
1-09	Zigzag stitch	*J	For overcasting, mending. Reverse stitch is sewn while pressing "Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch" button.	3.5 (1/8)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.4 (1/16)	0.0 - 4.0 (0 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-10	Zigzag stitch	* J	For overcasting, mending. Reinforcement stitch is sewn while pressing "Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch" button.	3.5 (1/8)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.4 (1/16)	0.0 - 4.0 (0 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-11	Zigzag stitch (right)	* J	Start from right needle position, zigzag sew at left.	3.5 (1/8)	2.5 - 5.0 (3/32 - 3/16)	1.4 (1/16)	0.3 - 4.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-12	Zigzag stitch (left)	* J	Start from left needle position, zigzag sew at right.	3.5 (1/8)	2.5 - 5.0 (3/32 - 3/16)	1.4 (1/16)	0.3 - 4.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-13 <	2 step elastic zigzag	* J	Overcasting (medium weight and stretch fabrics), tape and elastic	5.0 (3/16)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	1.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	OK (J)
1-14	2 step elastic zigzag	* J	Overcasting (medium weight and stretch fabrics), tape and elastic	5.0 (3/16)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	1.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	OK (J)
1-15 <:/-	3 step elastic zigzag	*1	Overcasting (medium, heavyweight and stretch fabrics), tape and elastic	5.0 (3/16)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	1.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	OK (J)
1-16	Overcasting stitch	G	Reinforcing of light and medium weight fabrics	3.5 (1/8)	2.5 - 5.0 (3/32 - 3/16)	2.0 (1/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch.)]		St [n	Twin needle		
		1001		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	Heedle
1-17	Overcasting stitch	G	Reinforcing of heavyweight fabric	5.0 (3/16)	2.5 - 5.0 (3/32 - 3/16)	2.5 (3/32)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
1-18	Overcasting stitch	G	Reinforcing of medium, heavyweight and easily frayable fabrics or decorative stitching.	5.0 (3/16)	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	2.5 (3/32)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
1-19	Overcasting stitch	• J	Reinforced seaming of stretch fabric	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 9/32)	2.5 (3/32)	0.5 - 4.0 (1/32 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-20	Overcasting stitch	• J	Reinforcing of medium stretch fabric and heavyweight fabric, decorative stitching	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 9/32)	2.5 (3/32)	0.5 - 4.0 (1/32 - 3/16)	OK
1-21 X X X	Overcasting stitch	• J	Reinforcement of stretch fabric or decorative stitching	4.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	4.0 (3/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK
1-22	Overcasting stitch	J	Stretch knit seam	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	4.0 (3/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
1-23	Single diamond overcast	* J	Reinforcement and seaming stretch fabric	6.0 (15/ 64)	1.0 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	3.0 (1/8)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK
1-24	Single diamond overcast	* J	Reinforcement of stretch fabric	6.0 (15/ 64)	1.0 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	1.8 (1/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-25 s	With side cutter	S	Straight stitch while cutting fabrics	0.0 (0)	0.0 - 2.5 (0 - 3/32)	2.5 (3/32)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
1-26 \$ \$s	With side cutter	ß s	Zigzag stitch while cutting fabrics	3.5 (1/8)	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	1.4 (1/16)	0.0 - 4.0 (0 - 3/16)	NO
1-27 >s	With side cutter	j s	Overcasting stitch while cutting fabrics	3.5 (1/8)	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	2.0 (1/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
1-28 S	With side cutter	j s	Overcasting stitch while cutting fabrics	5.0 (3/16)	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	2.5 (3/32)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
1-29	With side cutter	ĵ,	Overcasting stitch while cutting fabrics	5.0 (3/16)	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	2.5 (3/32)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
1-30 i	Piecing stitch (Right)	* J	Piecework/patchwork 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) right seam allowance	5.5 (7/32)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
1-31 P	Piecing stitch (Middle)	* J	Piecework/patchwork	_	_	2.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
1-32 i	Piecing stitch (Left)		Piecework/patchwork 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) left seam allowance	1.5 (1/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
1-33 	Hand-look quilting		Quilting stitch made to look like hand quilting stitch	0.0 (0)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
1-34 S Q	Quilting appliqué zigzag stitch		Zigzag stitch for quilting and sewing on appliqué quilt pieces	3.5 (1/8)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.4 (1/16)	0.0 - 4.0 (0 - 3/16)	NO
1-35 	Quilting appliqué stitch	•1	Quilting stitch for invisible appliqué or attaching binding	1.5 (1/16)	0.5 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	1.8 (1/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
1-36 33/32/2 2/2/2/2	Quilting stippling		Background quilting	7.0 (1/4)	1.0 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	1.6 (1/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch.)]		Stitch length [mm (inch.)]		Twin needle	
		1001		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	Heedie
2-01	Blind hem stitch	R	Hemming woven fabrics	0.0 (0)	+3.03.0 (+1/81/8)	2.0 (1/16)	1.0 - 3.5 (1/16 - 1/8)	NO
2-02	Blind hem stitch stretch	R	Hemming stretch fabric	0.0 (0)	+3.03.0 (+1/81/8)	2.0 (1/16)	1.0 - 3.5 (1/16 - 1/8)	NO
2-03	Blanket stitch	* J	Appliqués, decorative blanket stitch	3.5 (1/8)	2.5 - 7.0 (3/32 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	1.6 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
2-04 - - -	Shell tuck edge	* J	Shell tuck edge finish on fabrics	4.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	OK (J)
3	Satin scallop stitch	r F	Decorating collar of blouse, edge of handkerchief	5.0 (3/16)	2.5 - 7.0 (3/32 - 1/4)	0.5 (1/32)	0.1 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	OK (J)
2-06	Scallop stitch	Z R	Decorating collar of blouse, edge of handkerchief	7.0 (1/4)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.4 (1/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
2-07	Patchwork join stitch	* J	Patchwork stitches, decorative stitching	4.0 (1/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.2 (1/16)	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	OK (J)
2-08	Patchwork double overlock stitch	*J	Patchwork stitches, decorative stitching	5.0 (3/16)	2.5 - 7.0 (3/32 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
2-09 ->- 	Couching stitch	J	Decorative stitching, attaching cord and couching	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.2 (1/16)	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	OK (J)
2-10	Smocking stitch	*J	Smocking, decorative stitching	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.6 (1/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
2-11	Feather stitch	* J	Fagoting, decorative stitching	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
2-12	Fagoting cross stitch	J	Fagoting, bridging and decorative stitching	5.0 (3/16)	2.5 - 7.0 (3/32 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
2-13 \$	Tape attaching	* J	Attaching tape to seam in stretch fabric	4.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 4.0 (1/61 - 3/16)	OK (J)
2-14	Ladder stitch	J	Decorative stitching	4.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	3.0 (1/8)	2.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
2-15	Rick-rack stitch	J	Decorative top stitching	4.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
2-16	Decorative stitch	* J	Decorative stitching	1.0 (1/16)	1.0 - 3.0 (1/16 - 1/8)	2.5 (3/32)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
2-17	Decorative stitch	* J	Decorative stitching	5.5 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.6 (1/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
2-18	Serpentine stitch	r F	Decorative stitching and attaching elastic	5.0 (3/16)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	1.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
2-19 NNAM	Decorative stitch	R	Decorative stitching and appliqué	6.0 (15/ 64)	1.0 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	1.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
2-20 555 555	Decorative stippling stitch	N F	Decorative stitching	7.0 (1/4)	1.0 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	1.6 (1/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser Applic	Applications		Stitch width [mm (inch.)]		itch length nm (inch.)]	Twin
		foot	The state of the s	Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	needle
3-01 	Hemstitching	N R	Decorative hems, triple straight at left	1.0 (1/16)	1.0 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
3-02 	Hemstitching	N F	Decorative hems, triple straight at center	3.5 (1/8)	1.0 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
3-03	Hemstitching zigzag	N R	Decorative hems, top stitching	6.0 (15/ 64)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	3.0 (1/8)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
3-04 E	Hemstitching	N R	Decorative hems, lace attaching pin stitch	3.5 (1/8)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	1.6 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
3-05	Hemstitching	r F	Decorative hems	3.0 (1/8)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	3.5 (1/8)	1.6 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
3-06 * * *	Hemstitching	r R	Decorative hems daisy stitch	6.0 (15/ 64)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	3.0 (1/8)	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
3-07 	Hemstitching	Z R	Heirloom, decorative hems	5.0 (3/16)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	3.5 (1/8)	1.6 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
3-08	Hemstitching	Z R	Heirloom, decorative hems	5.0 (3/16)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	3.5 (1/8)	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
3-09 (**)	Hemstitching	N R	Heirloom, decorative hems	5.0 (3/16)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	3.5 (1/8)	1.6 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK
3-10	Hemstitching	N R	Heirloom, decorative hems	5.0 (3/16)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	4.0 (3/16)	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
3-11	Hemstitching	N R	Heirloom, decorative hems	4.0 (3/16)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
3-12	Honeycomb stitch	N R	Heirloom, decorative hems	5.0 (3/64)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK
3-13 **	Honeycomb stitch	N R	Heirloom, decorative hems	6.0 (15/ 64)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	3.5 (1/8)	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
3-14 X X	Hemstitching	Z R	Heirloom, decorative hems	6.0 (15/ 64)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	1.6 (1/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
3-15	Hemstitching	Z R	Heirloom, decorative hems	6.0 (15/ 64)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	3.0 (1/8)	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
3-16 × ×	Hemstitching	N F	Heirloom, decorative hems	6.0 (15/ 64)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	4.0 (3/16)	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK (J)
3-17	Hemstitching	N F	Heirloom, decorative hems	4.0 (3/16)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	1.6 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
3-18	Hemstitching	R	Heirloom, decorative hems	5.0 (3/16)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	2.0 (1/16)	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK
3-19	Hemstitching	R	Decorative hems and bridging stitch	6.0 (15/ 64)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	2.0 (1/16)	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK
3-20	Hemstitching	N R	Decorative hems. Fagoting, attaching ribbon	5.0 (3/16)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	3.0 (1/8)	1.5 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	OK

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser	Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch.)]		Stitch length [mm (inch.)]		Twin needle
		foot		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	needie
3-21	Hemstitching	X	Decorative hems, smocking	6.0 (15/ 64)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	1.6 (1/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
3-22 2	Hemstitching	N R	Decorative hems, smocking	5.0 (3/16)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	1.6 (1/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
3-23	Hemstitching	N R	Decorative hems, smocking	5.0 (3/16)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	1.6 (1/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
3-24	Hemstitching	Z F	Decorative hems	5.0 (3/16)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	1.6 (1/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
3-25	Ladder stitch	r R	Decorative hems. Fagoting, attaching ribbon	7.0 (1/4)	5.0 - 7.0 (3/16 - 1/4)	1.6 (1/16)	1.0 - 4.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
4-01	Narrow rounded buttonhole		Buttonhole on light to medium weight fabrics	5.0 (3/16)	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-02	Wide round ended buttonhole		Buttonholes with extra space for larger buttons	5.5 (7/32)	3.5 - 5.5 (1/8 - 7/32)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-03	Tapered round ended buttonhole		Reinforced waist tapered buttonholes	5.0 (3/16)	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-04	Round ended buttonhole		Buttonholes with vertical bar tack in heavyweight fabrics	5.0 (3/16)	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-05	Round ended buttonhole		Buttonholes with bar tack	5.0 (3/16)	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-06	Round double ended buttonhole		Buttonholes for fine, medium to heavyweight fabrics	5.0 (3/16)	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-07	Narrow squared buttonhole	Ä	Buttonholes for light to medium weight fabrics	5.0 (3/16)	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-08	Wide squared buttonhole	Ā	Buttonholes with extra space for larger decorative buttons	5.5 (7/32)	3.5 - 5.5 (1/8 - 7/32)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-09	Squared buttonhole	Ā	Heavy-duty buttonholes with vertical bar tacks	5.0 (7/32)	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-10	Stretch buttonhole		Buttonholes for stretch or woven fabrics	6.0 (15/ 64)	3.0 - 6.0 (1/8 - 15/64)	1.0 (1/16)	0.5 - 2.0 (1/32 - 1/16)	NO
4-11	Heirloom buttonhole		Buttonholes for heirloom and stretch fabrics	6.0 (15/ 64)	3.0 - 6.0 (1/8 - 15/64)	1.5 (1/16)	1.0 - 3.0 (1/1 - 1/8)	NO
4-12	Bound buttonhole		The first step in making bound buttonholes	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 6.0 (0 - 15/64)	2.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
4-13	Keyhole buttonhole	Ā	Buttonholes in heavyweight or thick fabrics for larger flat buttons	7.0 (1/4)	3.0 - 7.0 (1/8 - 1/4)	0.5 (1/32)	0.3 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
1	Tapered keyhole buttonhole		Buttonholes in medium to heavy weight fabrics for larger flat buttons	7.0 (1/4)	3.0 - 7.0 (1/8 - 1/4)	0.5 (1/32)	0.3 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-15	Keyhole buttonhole	Ā	Buttonholes with vertical bar tack for reinforcement in heavyweight or thick fabrics	7.0 (1/4)	3.0 - 7.0 (1/8 - 1/4)	0.5 (1/32)	0.3 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser	Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch.)]		Stitch length [mm (inch.)]		Twin
		foot	,	Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	needle
4-16 []	4 step buttonhole 1	Z R	Left side of 4 step buttonhole	5.0 (7/32)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-17	4 step buttonhole 2	Z	Bar tack of 4 step buttonhole	5.0 (7/32)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-18	4 step buttonhole 3	F	Right side of 4 step buttonhole	5.0 (7/32)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-19	4 step buttonhole 4	X	Bar tack of 4 step buttonhole	5.0 (7/32)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-20 INNN IIIIII IIIIIII	Darning	A	Darning of medium weight fabric	7.0 (1/4)	2.5 - 7.0 (3/32 - 1/4)	2.0 (1/16)	0.4 - 2.5 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-21	Darning	A	Darning of heavyweight fabric	7.0 (1/4)	2.5 - 7.0 (3/32 - 1/4)	2.0 (1/16)	0.4 - 2.5 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-22 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 1	Bar tack	Ā	Reinforcement at opening of pocket, etc.	2.0 (1/16)	1.0 - 3.0 (1/16 - 1/8)	0.4 (1/64)	0.3 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-23 •	Button sewing	₩ ₩	Attaching buttons	3.5 (1/8)	2.5 - 4.5 (3/32 - 3/16)	_	_	NO
4-24	Eyelet	Z F	For making eyelets, holes on belts, etc.	7.0 (1/4)	7.0 6.0 5.0 (1/4 15/64 3/16)	7.0 (1/4)	7.0 6.0 5.0 (1/4 15/64 3/16)	NO
4-25 और	Star eyelet	Z	For making star-shaped eyelets on holes.	_	_	_	_	NO
5-01	Diagonally left up (Straight)	Z	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners	_	_	_	_	NO
5-02 	Reverse (Straight)	F	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners	_	_	_	_	NO
5-03	Diagonally right up (Straight)	≥	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners	_	_	_	_	NO
5-04 	Sideways to left (Straight)	Z F	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric	_	_	_	_	NO
5-05 	Sideways to right (Straight)		For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric	_	_	_	_	NO
5-06	Diagonally left down (Straight)	R R	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners	_	_	_	_	NO
5-07	Forward (Straight)	Z F	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners	_	_	_	_	NO
5-08	Diagonally right down (Straight)	F	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners	_	_	_	_	NO
5-09 ~~~	Sideways to left (Zigzag)	Z F	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric	_	_	_	_	NO
5-10 ~~~	Sideways to right (Zigzag)	Z	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric	_	_	_	_	NO

Stitch	Stitch Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications		Stitch width [mm (inch.)]		itch length nm (inch.)]	Twin needle
		1001		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	lieeule
5-11 \$	Forward (Zigzag)	r R	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners	_	_	_	_	NO
5-12 \$ ↑	Reverse (Zigzag)	N FR	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners	_	_	_	_	NO

Index

A	embroidery edit195
Accessories	Cord guide bobbin cover61
included accessories	Crazy quilt61
options6	Custom Thread Table
Accessory compartment	Cut/Tension key154
Adjustments	
screen	D
screen brightness	Darning86
Air vent1	Dart seam57
Alarm sounds	Density key
Alphabet characters	Delisity Rey
character/decorative stitches	E
embroidery133	<u> </u>
embroidery edit178	Edit end key194
Appliqué73	Editing
embroidery patterns148	character/decorative stitches105
quilting69	embroidery159
using a zigzag stitch60	embroidery edit181
using an embroidery frame pattern173	MY CUSTOM STITCH202
Array key	Elastic zigzag stitches62
Arrow keys	Elongation key107
Automatic reinforcement stitch key	Embroidery
Automatic thread cutting key	adjusting the speed155, 156
Automatic Threading button	edges or corners141
	key functions137
B	restarting from the beginning152
Don't a plus	resuming embroidery after turning off the power152
Bar tacks	ribbons or tape142
Basting 56 Blind hem stitches 72	selecting patterns
Block move key	small fabrics141
Bobbin 203	thread color display
pulling up the bobbin thread	thread trimming function
runs out of thread	Embroidery card
setting	Embroidery card slot
winding19	Embroidery edit changing the thread color187
Bobbin case	combined patterns
Bobbin cover	custom thread table
Bobbin holder (switch)21	explanation of functions
Bobbin winder1	key functions
Border key	repeated patterns190
Button sewing90	Embroidery foot "W"
4 hole buttons90	Embroidery frame display158
shank91	Embroidery frames
Buttonhole lever	attaching143
Buttonholes	inserting fabric140
four-step84	removing143
odd-shaped/buttons that do not fit the button holder plate 83	types139
one-step80	using the embroidery sheet141
	Embroidery needle plate cover146
C	Embroidery patterns
	checking the position144
Character spacing key	combining195
Character/Decorative Stitches	editing181
adjustments	pattern selection screens
combining	patterns which use appliqué148
editing	retrieving170, 171
key functions	revising
retrieving	saving
saving	selecting
selecting	sewing
sewing	using a frame pattern to make an appliqué173, 174
stitch selection screens	Embroidery sheet
Cleaning LCD screen210	Embroidery unit
machine casing 210	carriage2
race210	carrying case
Combining Patterns	Enlarger key
character/decorative stitches110	Error messages
Character/decorative stricties	Eyelet92

F		N	
Fabrics		Needle	
fabric/thread/needle combinations	36	changing the needle	34
sewing heavyweight fabrics		changing the needle position	
sewing lightweight fabrics		fabric/thread/needle combinations	36
sewing stretch fabrics		mode	
Fagoting		twin needle	
Feed dog position switch1,		Needle bar thread guides	
Feed dogs		Needle clamp screw	
Flat bed attachment		Needle mode selection key	
Flat fell Seam	*	Needle plate	
Foot controller		Needle position	
Forward/Back key	,	Needle Position button	
G		0	
Gathering	57	Operation buttons	
Grid direction key		Overcasting	60, 62, 63
,		· ·	
H		P	
Handle	1	Patchwork	61
Handwheel		Piecing	
Hard case	,	Pintuck	
Heirloom		Point delete key	
	/ 0	. '	
Hemstitching	70	Power cord	c
daisy stitch		Presser foot	
drawn work	79	attaching	
		removing	
1		types	227
		Presser foot code	9, 136
Image key49, 108,		Presser foot holder	2, 32
Insert key	206	Presser foot holder screw	
		Presser foot lever	1 , 41
The second secon		Presser Foot Lifter button	
		Presser foot/Needle exchange key	
Jack connector	I	Pretension disk	1, 20, 22
K		Q	
Key functions		Quilting	67
character/decorative stitches	105	free-motion	
embroidery		with satin stitches	
embroidery edit		with satin siteries	
MY CUSTOM STITCH	202		
		R	
utility stitches		Page	216
Knee lifter	1, 40	Race	
		Repeated patterns	190
L		Retrieving	125
LCD	1 0	character/decorative stitch patterns	
LCD screen	,	computer	
adjusting		embroidery patterns	
cleaning		machine's memory	
locking	46	MY CUSTOM STITCH designs	
Lower threading		stitch settings	51
pulling up the bobbin thread	23	USB media	123, 170
setting the bobbin	22	utility stitches	51
winding the bobbin	19	Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch button	3, 40, 44
		Reverse/Reinforcement stitches	40, 44
M		Rotate key	161, 183
			
Machine operation mode key		S	
Main power switch		C c' c' l	==
Maintenance Message		Satin stitches	70, 108
Mirror image key49,		Saving	
Multi color key		character/decorative stitches	
Multi-directional sewing	93	computer	
MY CUSTOM STITCH		embroidery patterns	
designing		machine's memory	
entering data		MY CUSTOM STITCH designs	207
key functions		stitch settings	
retrieving	208	USB media	120, 168
saving	207	utility stitches	50

Set key	for media
Settings	Utility stitches
automatic reinforcement stitching44	key functions
automatic thread cutting	pattern explanation l
display language	retrieving
embroidery settings	saving
general settings	selectingsewing type selection
screen brightness	stitch selection scree
sewing settings	stitch setting chart
stitch length42	,
stitch width42	V
thread tension	
thread trimming155	Vertical spool pin
Sewing speed controller (speed control slide)	
Sewing type selection key	W
Side cutter	Walking foot
Single/Repeat sewing key	warking look
Single/triple stitching key	Z
Size key	
Size selection key	Zigzag stitches
Smocking stitches	Zipper insertion
Specifications	centered
Spool cap	side
Spool net	
Spool pin	
Start/Stop button	
Starting point key	
Step stitch patterns	
Stitch setting chart	
Straight stitch needle plate54	
Straight stiten needle plate	
Straight stitches	
Straight stitches	
Straight stitches	
Straight stitches	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 Tape attaching 62	
Straight stitches	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 T Tape attaching 62 Tape or elastic attaching 77 Test key 204, 207 Thread 204, 207	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 Tape attaching 62 Tape or elastic attaching 77 Test key 204, 207 Thread fabric/thread/needle combinations 36	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 T Tape attaching 62 Tape or elastic attaching 77 Test key 204, 207 Thread fabric/thread/needle combinations 36 thread tension 43, 154	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 T Tape attaching 62 Tape or elastic attaching 77 Test key 204, 207 Thread 36 fabric/thread/needle combinations 36 thread tension 43, 154 Thread color display 157	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 T Tape attaching 62 Tape or elastic attaching 77 Test key 204, 207 Thread 36 fabric/thread/needle combinations 36 thread tension 43, 154 Thread color display 157 Thread cutter 1, 39	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 T Tape attaching 62 Tape or elastic attaching 77 Test key 204, 207 Thread 36 thread tension 43, 154 Thread color display 157 Thread cutter 1, 39 Thread Cutter button 3	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 T 1, 19, 30 Tape attaching 62 Tape or elastic attaching 77 Test key 204, 207 Thread 36 fabric/thread/needle combinations 36 thread tension 43, 154 Thread color display 157 Thread cutter 1, 39 Thread Cutter button 3 Thread density key 108	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 T 1, 19, 30 Tape attaching 62 Tape or elastic attaching 77 Test key 204, 207 Thread 36 fabric/thread/needle combinations 36 thread tension 43, 154 Thread color display 157 Thread cutter 1, 39 Thread Cutter button 3 Thread density key 108 Thread guide 1, 20, 22, 30	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 T 1, 19, 30 Tape attaching 62 Tape or elastic attaching 77 Test key 204, 207 Thread 36 fabric/thread/needle combinations 36 thread tension 43, 154 Thread color display 157 Thread cutter 1, 39 Thread Cutter button 3 Thread density key 108	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 T 1, 19, 30 Tape attaching 62 Tape or elastic attaching 77 Test key 204, 207 Thread 36 fabric/thread/needle combinations 36 thread tension 43, 154 Thread color display 157 Thread cutter 1, 39 Thread Cutter button 3 Thread density key 108 Thread guide 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate 1, 22, 25	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 T 1, 19, 30 Tape attaching 77 Tape or elastic attaching 77 Test key 204, 207 Thread 36 fabric/thread/needle combinations 36 thread tension 43, 154 Thread color display 157 Thread cutter 1, 39 Thread Cutter button 3 Thread density key 108 Thread guide 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate 1, 22, 25 Thread marks 193 Thread palette key 186, 187, 189 Top cover 1	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 T 1, 19, 30 Tape attaching 77 Tape or elastic attaching 77 Test key 204, 207 Thread 36 fabric/thread/needle combinations 36 thread tension 43, 154 Thread color display 157 Thread cutter 1, 39 Thread Cutter button 3 Thread density key 108 Thread guide 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate 1, 22, 25 Thread palette key 186, 187, 189 Top cover 1 Top stitching 75	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 T 1, 19, 30 Tape attaching 77 Tape or elastic attaching 77 Test key 204, 207 Thread 36 fabric/thread/needle combinations 36 thread tension 43, 154 Thread color display 157 Thread cutter 1, 39 Thread Cutter button 3 Thread density key 108 Thread guide 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread palette key 186, 187, 189 Top cover 1 Top stitching 75 Touch pen 187, 203, 212	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 T 1, 19, 30 Tape attaching 77 Tape or elastic attaching 77 Test key 204, 207 Thread 36 fabric/thread/needle combinations 36 thread tension 43, 154 Thread color display 157 Thread cutter 1, 39 Thread Cutter button 3 Thread density key 108 Thread guide 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread palette key 186, 187, 189 Top cover 1 Top stitching 75 Touch pen 187, 203, 212 holder 1	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 T 1, 19, 30 Tape attaching 77 Tape or elastic attaching 77 Test key 204, 207 Thread 36 fabric/thread/needle combinations 36 thread tension 43, 154 Thread color display 157 Thread cutter 1, 39 Thread Cutter button 3 Thread density key 108 Thread guide 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate 1, 22, 25 Thread palette key 186, 187, 189 Top cover 1 Top stitching 75 Touch pen 187, 203, 212 holder 1 Trial key 144	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 T 1, 19, 30 Tape attaching 77 Tape or elastic attaching 77 Test key 204, 207 Thread 36 fabric/thread/needle combinations 36 thread tension 43, 154 Thread color display 157 Thread cutter 1, 39 Thread Cutter button 3 Thread density key 108 Thread guide 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread palette key 186, 187, 189 Top cover 1 Top stitching 75 Touch pen 187, 203, 212 holder 1	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 T 1, 19, 30 Tape attaching 77 Tape or elastic attaching 77 Test key 204, 207 Thread 36 fabric/thread/needle combinations 36 thread tension 43, 154 Thread color display 157 Thread cutter 1, 39 Thread Gutter button 3 Thread density key 108 Thread guide 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate 1, 22, 25 Thread marks 193 Thread palette key 186, 187, 189 Top cover 1 Top stitching 75 Touch pen 187, 203, 212 holder 1 Trial key 144 Troubleshooting 214	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 T 1, 19, 30 Tape attaching 77 Tape or elastic attaching 77 Test key 204, 207 Thread 36 fabric/thread/needle combinations 36 thread tension 43, 154 Thread color display 157 Thread cutter 1, 39 Thread Gutter button 3 Thread density key 108 Thread guide 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate 1, 22, 25 Thread marks 193 Thread palette key 186, 187, 189 Top cover 1 Top stitching 75 Touch pen 187, 203, 212 holder 1 Trial key 144 Troubleshooting 214	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 T 1, 19, 30 Tape attaching .62 Tape or elastic attaching .77 Test key .204, 207 Thread .36 fabric/thread/needle combinations .36 thread tension .43, 154 Thread color display .157 Thread cutter .1, 39 Thread Cutter button .3 Thread guide .1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate .1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate .1, 20, 22, 30 Thread palette key .186, 187, 189 Top cover .1 Top stitching .75 Touch pen .187, 203, 212 holder .1 Trial key .144 Troubleshooting .214 Twin needle .29	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 T 1, 19, 30 Tape attaching .62 Tape or elastic attaching .77 Test key .204, 207 Thread .36 fabric/thread/needle combinations .36 thread tension .43, 154 Thread color display .157 Thread cutter .1, 39 Thread Cutter button .3 Thread density key .108 Thread guide .1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate .1, 20, 22, 30 Thread palette key .186, 187, 189 Top cover .1 Top stitching .75 Touch pen .187, 203, 212 holder .1 Trial key .144 Troubleshooting .214 Twin needle .29	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 T 1, 19, 30 T 204 Tape attaching 77 Test key 204, 207 Thread 36 fabric/thread/needle combinations 36 thread tension 43, 154 Thread color display 157 Thread cutter 1, 39 Thread Cutter button 3 Thread guide 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread palette key 186, 187, 189 Top cover 1 Top stitching 75 Touch pen 187, 203, 212 holder 1 Trial key 144 Troubleshooting 214 Twin needle 29 U Upgrading 224 Upper threading 224	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 I 1, 19, 30 I Tape attaching 62 Tape or elastic attaching 77 Test key 204, 207 Thread 36 fabric/thread/needle combinations 36 thread tension 43, 154 Thread color display 157 Thread cutter 1, 39 Thread Cutter button 3 Thread density key 108 Thread guide 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread palette key 186, 187, 189 Top cover 1 Top stitching 75 Touch pen 187, 203, 212 holder 1 Trial key 144 Troubleshooting 214 Twin needle 29 U Upgrading 224 Upper threading threading manually 27	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 I 1, 19, 30 I 1, 19, 30 I 1, 19, 30 I 204 I 204 I 204, 207 I 36 I 40, 207 I 36 I 43, 154 I 157 I 159 I 157 I 159 I 159 I 159 I 150 I 150 I 150 I 150 I 15	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 I 1, 19, 30 I Tape attaching 62 Tape or elastic attaching 77 Test key 204, 207 Thread 36 fabric/thread/needle combinations 36 thread tension 43, 154 Thread color display 157 Thread cutter 1, 39 Thread Cutter button 3 Thread guide 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide blate 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread palette key 186, 187, 189 Top cover 1 Top stitching 75 Touch pen 187, 203, 212 holder 1 Trial key 144 Troubleshooting 214 Twin needle 29 Upgrading 224 Upper threading threading manually 27 twin needle mode 29 using the "Automatic Threading" button 25	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 I 1, 19, 30 I 1, 19, 30 I 1, 19, 30 I 204 I 204 I 204, 207 I 36 I 40, 207 I 36 I 43, 154 I 157 I 159 I 157 I 159 I 159 I 159 I 150 I 150 I 150 I 150 I 15	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 T 1, 19, 30 Tape or elastic attaching 77 Test key 204, 207 Thread 36 thread fabric/thread/needle combinations 36 thread color display 157 Thread color display 157 Thread color display 157 Thread culter 1, 39 Thread culter button 3 Thread density key 108 Thread guide 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate 1, 22, 25 Thread marks 193 Thread palette key 186, 187, 189 Top cover 1 Top stitching 75 Touch pen 187, 203, 212 holder 1 Trial key 144 Troubleshooting 214 Twin needle 29 <tr< td=""><td></td></tr<>	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 T 1, 19, 30 Tape attaching 77 Test key 204, 207 Thread 36 fabric/thread/needle combinations 36 fabric/thread color display 157 Thread color display 157 Thread cutter 1, 39 Thread Gutter button 3 Thread guide 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread marks 193 Thread palette key 186, 187, 189 Top cover 1 Top stitching 75 Touch pen 187, 203, 212 holder 1 Trial key 144 Troubleshooting 214 Twin needle 29 Using the "Automatic Threading" button 25 using the spool net 31 using the vertical spool pin 31 USB media 123, 170	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 T 1, 19, 30 Tape attaching 77 Test key 204, 207 Thread 36 fabric/thread/needle combinations 36 thread tension 43, 154 Thread color display 157 Thread cutter 1, 39 Thread guide mean cutter 1, 39 Thread guide butten 3 Thread guide plate 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate 1, 22, 25 Thread marks 193 Thread palette key 186, 187, 189 Top cover 1 Top stitching 75 Touch pen 187, 203, 212 holder 1 Trial key 14 Troubleshooting 214 Twin needle 29 using the "Automatic Threading" button 25 using the spool net 31 using the vertical spool pin 31 USB media 223, 170 sa	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 T 1, 19, 30 Tape or elastic attaching 77 Test key 204, 207 Thread 36 fabric/thread/needle combinations 36 thread tension 43, 154 Thread color display 157 Thread cutter button 3 Thread Cutter button 3 Thread guide 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate 1, 22, 25 Thread marks 193 Thread plette key 186, 187, 189 Top cover 1 Top stitching 75 Touch pen 187, 203, 212 holder 1 Trial key 144 Troubleshooting 214 Twin needle 29 using the "Automatic Threading" button 25 using the spool net 31 using the spool net 31 using the vertical spool pin 31 USB media 123, 170 s	
Straight stitches 53 Supplemental spool pin 1, 19, 30 T 1, 19, 30 Tape attaching 77 Test key 204, 207 Thread 36 fabric/thread/needle combinations 36 thread tension 43, 154 Thread color display 157 Thread cutter 1, 39 Thread guide mean cutter 1, 39 Thread guide butten 3 Thread guide plate 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate 1, 20, 22, 30 Thread guide plate 1, 22, 25 Thread marks 193 Thread palette key 186, 187, 189 Top cover 1 Top stitching 75 Touch pen 187, 203, 212 holder 1 Trial key 14 Troubleshooting 214 Twin needle 29 using the "Automatic Threading" button 25 using the spool net 31 using the vertical spool pin 31 USB media 223, 170 sa	

for media
Utility stitches key functions10 pattern explanation key18
retrieving
sewing type selection key
stitch setting chart227
V
Vertical spool pin31
W
Walking foot33
Z
Zigzag stitches
centered94